Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 920SH.
• For proper handset use, read this guide beforehand.
• Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
• Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 920SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes
• Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
• Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
• Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (P.14-38) about unclear or missing information.
Chapter Contents
At A Glance
Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset in portrait position (P.1-2) in Standby (P.1-8). Operations and results may differ by handset status. Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance. *(Japanese)* appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
# Table of Contents

**Guide Usage Notes** .................................................. ii  
**Table of Contents** .................................................. iii  
**Accessories** .......................................................... v  
**Safety Precautions** .................................................. vi  

## 1 Getting Started  
**Handset Parts** ....................................................... 1-2  
**Display** ................................................................. 1-4  
**Charging Battery** .................................................... 1-7  
**Power On/Off** .......................................................... 1-8  
**Keypad Lock** ........................................................... 1-9  
**My Details** ............................................................... 1-10  
**Cycloid Position** ..................................................... 1-11  
**Mobile Manners** ...................................................... 1-12  
**Security Codes** ........................................................ 1-13  

## 2 Basic Operations  
**Menu Operations** ................................................... 2-2  
**Multi Job** ................................................................. 2-3  
**Simple Menu** ........................................................... 2-4  
**Font Size** ................................................................. 2-5  
**Standby Display Options** .......................................... 2-6  
**Custom Screens** ...................................................... 2-8  
**Handset Responses** .................................................. 2-9  
**Text Entry** ............................................................... 2-10  
**User Dictionary** ........................................................ 2-15  
**Phone Book** ............................................................. 2-16  
**Mail Groups** ............................................................ 2-19  
**Data Folder** .............................................................. 2-20  
**Memory Card** ........................................................... 2-21  
**Additional Functions** ............................................... 2-23  

## 3 Calling  
**Voice Calling** .......................................................... 3-2  
**Video Calling** .......................................................... 3-4  
**Speed Dial** ............................................................. 3-5  
**Call Log** ................................................................. 3-6  
**Call Time & Call Cost** .............................................. 3-7  
**Optional Services** ................................................... 3-8  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 3-10  

## 4 Messaging  
**Messaging** ............................................................... 4-2  
**Sending Messages** .................................................. 4-4  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 4-8  
**Incoming Messages** ................................................ 4-10  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 4-12  
**Handling Messages** ............................................... 4-14  
**Chat Folder** .............................................................. 4-16  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 4-17  

## 5 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser  
**Internet Services** ................................................... 5-2  
**Yahoo! Keitai** .......................................................... 5-3  
**PC Site Browser** ..................................................... 5-4  
**Browsing** ............................................................... 5-5  
**Bookmarks & Saved Pages** ...................................... 5-7  
**S! Quick News** ........................................................ 5-8  
**S! Town & S! Loop** .................................................. 5-9  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 5-10  

## 6 Digital TV  
**Digital TV** ............................................................. 6-2  
**TV Player** ............................................................... 6-6  
**TV Timer** ............................................................... 6-8  
**Additional Functions** .............................................. 6-9  

## 7 Camera & Imaging  
**Camera** ................................................................. 7-2  
**Photo Camera** ......................................................... 7-4  
**Video Camera** ........................................................ 7-5  
**Shooting Modes** ..................................................... 7-6  
**Editing Images** ....................................................... 7-8  
**Printing** ................................................................. 7-11  

## 8 Media Player & S! Applications  
**Media Player** ........................................................ 8-2  
**Music** ................................................................. 8-4  
**Video** ................................................................. 8-6  
**Playlists** ............................................................... 8-8  
**Editing Video** ......................................................... 8-9  
**S! Applications** ....................................................... 8-12  
**Additional Functions** ............................................. 8-14  

## 9 Handy Extras  
**Pen Light** ............................................................... 9-2  
**Calendar & Tasks** .................................................. 9-3  
**Notepad** ............................................................... 9-8  
**Expenses Memo** ...................................................... 9-9  
**Voice Recorder** ...................................................... 9-10  
**Osifu-Keitai®/S! FeliCa** ......................................... 9-11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calculator ..................................................................................................</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarms ......................................................................................................</td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakeup TV ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hour Minder .............................................................................................</td>
<td>9-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Clock .............................................................................................</td>
<td>9-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopwatch ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>9-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countdown Timer .....................................................................................</td>
<td>9-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Cast .....................................................................................................</td>
<td>9-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Viewer .....................................................................................</td>
<td>9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-Books .................................................................................................</td>
<td>9-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan Barcode ...........................................................................................</td>
<td>9-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create QR Code .......................................................................................</td>
<td>9-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan Card ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>9-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Scanner ..........................................................................................</td>
<td>9-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Functions ............................................................................</td>
<td>9-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10 Communication Services</strong> ................................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Friend’s Status ..................................................................................</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Circle Talk .......................................................................................</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near Chat ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>10-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11 Handset Security</strong> .........................................................................</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handset Security ....................................................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12 Connectivity &amp; File Backup</strong> ........................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared .................................................................................................</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth® ............................................................................................</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Storage ..........................................................................................</td>
<td>12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup ...................................................................................................</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ................................................................</td>
<td>12-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>13 Handset Customization</strong> ................................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Settings .......................................................................................</td>
<td>13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display ....................................................................................................</td>
<td>13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringtones &amp; Sounds ..............................................................................</td>
<td>13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Entry &amp; Phone Book .......................................................................</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling ....................................................................................................</td>
<td>13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messaging ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser .......................................................</td>
<td>13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital TV ..............................................................................................</td>
<td>13-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera &amp; Media Player ..........................................................................</td>
<td>13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Applications ......................................................................................</td>
<td>13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handy Extras ..........................................................................................</td>
<td>13-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication Services .........................................................................</td>
<td>13-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity ..........................................................................................</td>
<td>13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset .......................................................................................................</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>14 Appendix</strong> .......................................................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USIM Card ...............................................................................................</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery .................................................................................................</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Update .....................................................................................</td>
<td>14-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting ......................................................................................</td>
<td>14-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Assignments .....................................................................................</td>
<td>14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pager Codes ............................................................................................</td>
<td>14-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character Codes ....................................................................................</td>
<td>14-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifications .......................................................................................</td>
<td>14-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menus .....................................................................................................</td>
<td>14-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index ......................................................................................................</td>
<td>14-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty &amp; Service ...............................................................................</td>
<td>14-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service ..................................................................................</td>
<td>14-38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Accessories

- Battery (SHBBG1)
- USB Cable (Complimentary sample)
- Headphones (with Microphone) (Black, SHLBG1)
- Utility Software (Japanese) (Complimentary sample)

Use specified Charger (sold separately) only.

- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38).
- In this guide, Headphones (with Microphone) is referred to as “Headphones.”
- Utility Software is designed exclusively for 920SH. Download newest versions via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.14-21).
Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.
Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

Symbols
Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>DANGER Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>WARNING Risk of death or serious injury from improper use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>CAUTION Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prohibited Actions  Compulsory Actions  Attention Required
Use specified battery and Charger only (P.v, P.1-7). Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals. Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry battery.

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:
- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or warped battery
- Use non-specified charger (P.1-7)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately. Eyes may be severely damaged.

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset or Charger. Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset or Charger; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children’s reach.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity. Fire or electric shock may result.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers. Keep the handset and Charger away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

Do not place battery or handset in ovens, microwave ovens, etc. Battery or other parts may leak, burst, overheat or ignite; may cause malfunction, accident or injury.

Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.
- Do not open handset or Charger; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger; fire or electric shock may result.

Do not use Mobile Light near people’s faces. Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents. CAUTION: Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

Mobile Light LED Properties:
- Emission Duration: Continuous
- Wavelength
  - White: 400 - 700 nm
- Maximum Emission Output
  - White: 240 μW (1.2 mw inside handset)
If an abnormality occurs, or water/foreign matter is inside handset:
If handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, or if water or foreign matter is inside it, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug AC Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk. Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using S! FeliCa at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Do not subject handset or Charger to strong shocks or impacts.
Avoid strong shocks to AC Charger while it is plugged into the outlet; may cause malfunction or injury.
Strong shocks or impacts to handset or Charger may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.
Do not use handset while driving; park beforehand. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004).
Do not use Headphones while driving or cycling. Accidents may result.
Moderate volume outside, especially near road/rail crossings, etc. to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by Headphones or strap.
May result in injury or breakage.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.
Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Do not remove protective film.
Display is protected with safety film; removing/damaging film may cause injury in case of Display breakage.

Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:
Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.
There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.
Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.
AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Do not use power adapters.
Using AC Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Charger care
Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it; may cause malfunction or injury.
Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.
May cause fire or electric shock; keep metal away from terminals.

Damaged AC Charger cord:
May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.

During thunderstorms:
Unplug AC Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.

Charger use and children:
May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.
**Battery**

- If battery does not charge properly, stop trying. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- At signs of a battery leak, avoid fire sources. It may catch fire or burst.

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.

**Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment**

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

- Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away. Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.
- Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near. Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.
- Observe these rules inside medical facilities:
  - Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
  - Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
  - Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.
- Consult electronic medical equipment vendor on radio wave effects.

**Handset, Battery & Charger**

**Handset care**
- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from heat/direct sunlight (e.g., inside vehicles, etc.). Warping, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

**Usage environment**
- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.
### Handset

- **Handset temperature**
  Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperatures. May cause burn injuries.

- **Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.)**
  Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.

- **Volume settings**
  Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

- **Headphones**
  - Do not force plugs or pull on cord; may damage plugs or cord.
  - Keep plugs clean to avoid noise and malfunction.

- **Inside vehicles**
  Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.

- **If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor**.
  Metal and other materials (P.14-18) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

### Charger

- **AC Charger cord**
  - Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect AC Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
  - Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
  - Do not force plugs or pull on cord; may damage plugs or cord.

- **Always charge handset in a well-ventilated area.**
  Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage/fire.

- **During periods of disuse**
  Always unplug AC Charger after use.

- **Handset maintenance**
  Always disconnect AC Charger when cleaning handset.

### Battery

- **Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.**

- **Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.**

- **Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.**

- **If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.**

- **Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.**

- **Keep battery out of children’s reach.**

- **Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.**

- **If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.**

- **If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.**

- **Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.**
General Notes

General Use
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- Beware of eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles
- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle’s electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft
- Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
- Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Handset Care
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- Never use handset while driving.
- Never use handset while operating a vehicle.
- Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
- Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
- Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbag, pack, etc.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.

Function Usage Limits
These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
- Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV.

General Use
- Handset use in prohibited areas may cause interference.
- Handset use may impair aircraft operation.
- Do not use handset near landlines, TVs or radios.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- Beware of eavesdropping.
- Deliberate or accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

General Notes
- General Use
- Inside Vehicles
- Aboard Aircraft
- Handset Care
- Function Usage Limits
- General Use
- Inside Vehicles
- Aboard Aircraft
- Handset Care
- Function Usage Limits
For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The guidelines include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The SAR value for this model is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>FCC ID</th>
<th>At the Ear</th>
<th>On the Body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>920SH</td>
<td>4PYR000062</td>
<td>0.375 W/kg</td>
<td>0.308 W/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide.

Highest SAR value:

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

*Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.*

**Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.**

*Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.*

**Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.**

*Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.*
Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

Video recording and playback are based on MPEG-4. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard (“MPEG-4 Video”) and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See http://www.mpegla.com. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.

Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc. RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries. This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrISS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.
Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

1. Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
2. Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
3. For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Customer Center, General Information
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see P.14-38 "Customer Service."

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

Microsoft® Word is a product name of Microsoft Corporation in the United States. Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation. ©2002-2007 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

Felica is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. Felica is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation. ©2008-2009 Sony Corporation. All rights reserved.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

This product employs Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Inc. Copyright ©1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

Adobe and Flash are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies. Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of SHARP Corporation.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, S! Quick News, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Circle Talk, S! Friend's Status, Lifestyle-App!, S! Familiar Usability, S! Music Connect and Secure Remote Lock are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
920SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves. These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 920SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.496 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html (Japanese)

Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2)
Handset Parts.................................1-2
Display ............................................1-4
Indicators......................................... 1-4
Viewing Display ..............................1-6
Charging Battery ............................1-7
Power On/Off ...................................1-8
Keypad Lock ....................................1-9
My Details......................................1-10
My Number .....................................1-10
Cycloid Position..............................1-11
Mobile Manners..............................1-12
Security Codes ...............................1-13
**Handset Parts**

1. Earpiece
2. Light Sensor
3. Display
4. Speaker
5. Microphone
6. Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)
7. Charger Terminal
8. Strap Eyelet
9. Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
10. Infrared Port
11. External Device Port (with Port Cover)
12. Internal Antenna Location
13. External Display
14. Small Light
15. Antenna (for TV reception)
16. External Camera (lens cover)
17. Mobile Light
18. Logo
19. Battery Cover

- **Portrait Position**
  Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

- **Cycloid Position**
  Open handset and rotate Display 90 degrees clockwise.

- **Display Positions**
  - **Closed Position**
    Handset is closed.

  - **Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.**
  - **Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.**

- **When Carrying Handset**
  - Keep Display in closed position to avoid damaging the handset/Display.
Handset Keys

Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.

1. Multi Selector (right): Open records of Received Calls.
5. Mail Key: Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.
6. Start Key: Open records of All Calls.
7. Clear/Back Key: Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
8. Shortcuts & A/a Key: Open Shortcuts menu.
9. Keypad: Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to use function shortcuts.

Handset Parts

1. Multi Selector (right): Open records of Received Calls.
5. Mail Key: Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.
6. Start Key: Open records of All Calls.
7. Clear/Back Key: Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
8. Shortcuts & A/a Key: Open Shortcuts menu.
9. Keypad: Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to use function shortcuts.
Indicators

Display Indicators

### Basic Status
- **1**: Signal strength* ( within 3G range, within GSM range)
- **2**: Packet transmission available
- **3**: Battery strength (may appear instead.)

*The more bars the better.

### Function Status
- **1**: Active S! Application
- **2**: Paused S! Application
- **3**: Music playback in progress
- **4**: TV recording in progress
- **5**: Memory Card in use
- **6**: Memory Card formatting
- **7**: TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
- **8**: Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
- **9**: Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

### Notifications
- **1**: Unread mail
- **2**: Unread Delivery Report
- **3**: Answer Phone active & message recorded
- **4**: Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
- **5**: New Voicemail
- **6**: Unread S! Cast info
- **7**: Contents Key received
- **8**: Unread S! Friend's Status notification
- **9**: Mail memory low
- **10**: Message delivery failure
- **11**: Memory Card unusable/misinserted

### Warnings
- **1**: Waiting/packet transmission in progress
- **2**: SSL browsing in progress
- **3**: Packet transmission protocol ready
- **4**: Receiving mail
- **5**: Sending mail
- **6**: S! Friend's Status online
- **7**: S! Friend's Status registration request received
- **8**: Software Update in progress
- **9**: Infrared transmission ready
- **10**: USB Cable connected
- **11**: Infrared transmission in progress
- **12**: Bluetooth® transmission ready
- **13**: Bluetooth® transmission in progress
- **14**: Bluetooth® talk in progress
- **15**: S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
- **16**: PC Site Browser in use
- **17**: Weather Indicator
### Settings

- **Basic Status**
  - Signal strength
  - Battery strength

- **Notifications**
  - Missed calls
  - Answer Phone message recorded
  - Missed Call Notification
  - New Voicemail
  - New mail
  - New Delivery Report
  - Content Key received
  - Unread S! Cast info
  - Weather Indicator update

- **External Display Indicators**
  - Signal strength
  - Battery strength

---

### Display

- **Handset Status**
  - Offline Mode active
  - Answer Phone active
  - Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always)
  - Hour Minder active
  - Alarm set
  - Schedule (Alarm set)
  - Schedule (Alarm unset)
  - Show Secret Data active
  - Password Lock active
  - Ringtone (Silent)
  - Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
  - Vibration active
  - Keypad Lock active
  - Manner mode active
  - Drive mode active
  - Original mode active
  - IC Card Lock active
  - Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active

### Warnings

- Message delivery failure
- S! Cast info reception failure

---

### Getting Started
Getting Started

1-6

Display

Viewing Display

Standby
Handset powers on and enters Standby.
- Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.

Menu Navigation
Select an item and press 0 to open it; press 0 to return.

Information Window
Information window opens for missed calls, new mail, etc.
- Information label and count appear in Information window.
- Select an item and press 0 to open it.

Softkeys
Functions/operations assigned to each key appear at the bottom of Display.
- Press 0 to select/execute.
- Press 0 to select/execute.
- Press 0 to select/execute.

Display Backlight
- Display turns off after a period of inactivity. To activate Display Backlight, press 0 - 0 - 0.

For Information List
Phone Information
Clearing Information List
[Information List] 0
Reset 0 0 Yes 0

Softkeys
- Press 0 to select/execute.
- Press 0 to select/execute.
- Press 0 to select/execute.
Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted to handset.
- Use specified AC Charger ZTDAA1 (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as “AC Charger.”
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.

1. Open Port Cover as shown
2. Connect AC Charger
   - With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.
3. Extend blades
4. Plug AC Charger into AC outlet
   - Small Light illuminates red while charging.
   - When charging completes Small Light goes out.
5. Unplug AC Charger
   - Pull AC Charger straight out.
6. Disconnect handset
   - Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
7. Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

Important AC Charger Usage Notes
- Fold back blades after charging.
- Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

When Small Light Flashes
- Battery is not charging due to defect or terminal exhaustion; replace it with a new one.

USB Charge
- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

Charging Battery Overseas
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Advanced
- Disabling USB Charge (P.13-17)
Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 920SH for the first time.

1. (Long)
   - After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.
   - (Long) Language
   - (Long) Change Menu window opens

2. Select option
   - Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.

   - My Details setup starts.

3. Enter last name
   - Enter first name
   - Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4. Yes or No
   - Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

When USIM Card is Not Installed
- Insert USIM Card appears; insert the card to use handset.

Advanced

- Date & Time (P.13-2)
- Network (P.13-17)

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , or is pressed for the first time.

- Choose Yes and press .
- Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock.

Power Off

- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.
Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

1 (Long)

• Keypad Lock is activated.

When Keypad Lock is Active
• Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press .
• Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
•  does not turn off handset power.

Canceling Keypad Lock
• (Long)
Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

**Editing My Details**
- After ①, ➫ ➫ ② Select item (except Tel 1) ➫ ➫ ③ Edit ➫ ➫ ④

**Clearing My Details**
- After ①, ➫ ➫ ② Reset My Details ➫ ④ ➫ ⑤ Yes ➫ ⑥

⑤ ➫ ⑥
Cycloid Position

The following menu opens the first time Display is rotated to landscape.

1. Rotate Display to landscape
2. Select item
3. Yes or No

Setting is applied and Landscape setup option confirmation appears.

Selection appears.

The following functions/windows remain active/open even after rotating Display from portrait to Cycloid position.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Available Functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahoo! Keitai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC Site Browser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Viewer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Windows</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this guide, most operations are described with Display in portrait position. Operational descriptions also apply in Cycloid position, however, use when selecting items in Main Menu.
Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1) (Long)

Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 920SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

Canceling Manner Mode

2) (Long)

Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1)  Settings  Network Settings
2)  Offline Mode
3)  On

Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In Off

Advanced

Selecting a handset mode  Customizing handset modes (P.13-2)
Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.
- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handset Code</th>
<th>9999 by default; use or change some functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Center Access Code</td>
<td>4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Password</td>
<td>4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Incorrect Code Entry
- **Handset code is incorrect!** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Changing Handset Code

1. **Settings**
2. **Phone Settings**
3. **Chng Handset Code**
   - Enter Current Code:
   - Enter New Code:
4. Enter current Handset Code
5. Enter new Handset Code
6. Re-enter new Handset Code
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Operations</th>
<th>2-2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handset Menus</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi Job</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggling Active Functions</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Menu</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Simplified Menus</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font Size</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Font Size</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Display Options</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Screens</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handset Responses</td>
<td>2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customizing Handset Responses</td>
<td>2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Entry</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters</td>
<td>2-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Characters</td>
<td>2-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Characters</td>
<td>2-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Dictionary</td>
<td>2-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Frequently Used Words</td>
<td>2-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Book</td>
<td>2-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Phone Book Entries</td>
<td>2-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Phone Book Entries</td>
<td>2-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail Groups</td>
<td>2-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail</td>
<td>2-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Folder</td>
<td>2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening Files</td>
<td>2-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Files &amp; Folders</td>
<td>2-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Card</td>
<td>2-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Memory Card</td>
<td>2-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Functions</td>
<td>2-25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Menu Operations

Handset Menus
In Standby, access functions from Main Menu, via Quick Operation/Shortcuts, or by rotating Display to Cycloid position.

In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

**Main Menu**
- Press 'to open Main Menu (gateway to functions).
- Select an item and press ' to open Sub Menus.

**Quick Operations**
Enter numbers to access functions.

**Shortcuts**
- Long Press ' to access assigned functions.
- Press ' to view shortcuts.
- Change shortcuts as needed.

**Cycloid Position**
- Assign a function in the menu that appears the first time Display is rotated to landscape.
- Change assigned function as needed.
Toggling Active Functions

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active. (Multi Job)

1. In a function window, or in text/phone number entry windows, Long Press [Shortcuts Menu].

2. Select function 🔄
   ● Menu/window opens.

3. To toggle active windows,
   - Select function 🔄

4. ➡️ Multi Job ends
   - When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

© Customizing Shortcuts (P.2-25)
Using Simplified Menus

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

### Key Assignments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shortcuts</th>
<th>Functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Long)</td>
<td>Change menu interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turn handset on/off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use Yahoo! Keitai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Open Messaging menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Long)</td>
<td>Create S! Mail message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Open All Calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Open Received Calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Open Calendar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Open Phone Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Long)</td>
<td>Create Phone Book entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate/cancel Manner mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate/cancel Keypad Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Play Answer Phone message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activate/cancel Answer Phone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using Simplified Menus

#### Messaging
- Received Msg.
- Create Msg.
- Drafts
- Templates
- Sent Messages
- Unsent Msg.
- Create SMS

#### Phone
- Phone Book
- Add New Entry
- Play Messages
- Answer Phone
- Call VM
- My Details
- Speed Dial

#### Camera

#### Convenient Tool
- Calendar
- Alarms
- Calculator
- Assignment
- S! Friend’s Status
- S! Circle Talk
- Change Menu

### Data Folder

#### TV

### Activating Simple Menu

1. (Long)

While Simple Menu is Active:
- Clock and fonts are enlarged and Calendar is hidden.
- Rotating Display to Cycloid position in Standby activates TV.

While Using a Function Not Available in Simple Menu:
- Simple Menu activation is disabled. End the function and retry.

### Canceling Simple Menu

1. (Long)

2. Standard Menu
Changing Font Size

Activating Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows.

1. **(Long)**
2. **Large Font Menu**

Canceling Large Font Menu

In **Standard Menu**, **(Long)**
**Standby Display Options**

**Standby Window (Japanese)**
In Standby, view S! Quick News or Calendar, access shortcut icons, and more.

1. Press \(\bigtriangledown\) to toggle panels. (Long Press \(\bigtriangledown\) to toggle panels in reverse.)

2. \(\bigtriangledown\) Select item \(\bigtriangledown\)

3. \(\bigtriangledown\) Select item \(\bigtriangledown\)

4. \(\bigtriangledown\) Standby Window closes

**Advanced**
Changing Display Option (P.2-25)

**Panel Selection**
1. In Standby Window, \(\bigtriangledown\) **Standby Window**
2. \(\bigtriangledown\) **Display Panel** \(\bigtriangledown\)
   Select panel \(\bigtriangledown\)

**Shortcut Panel & Calendar/Tag Panel**
- Select items to show on the panel.
  - [Shortcut Panel]/[Calendar/Tag Panel]
  - \(\bigtriangledown\) Select Item \(\bigtriangledown\)
  - To the left is an example of Shortcut Panel with all items checked \(\bigtriangledown\).
Basic Operations

**Using Tags**
1. In Calendar/Tag Panel, (select row with □) ➔
2. Enter text ➔

**Wallpaper**
Some files may not be usable.
1. ➔ Settings ➔ Phone Settings
2. ➔ Display ➔
3. ➔ Wallpaper ➔ Vertical or Horizontal ➔
4. ➔ Preset Pictures ➔

**Using Data Folder Images**
In (select folder) ➔
Select image ➔
- For images smaller or larger than Display, follow these steps.
  - Select option ➔
Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period
  - A confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press ➔ to proceed.

**Setting Multiple Images**
1. In Wallpaper menu, ➔ Slide W paper ➔
2. ➔ Pattern Setting ➔
3. ➔ Select pattern ➔

**Selecting Source Folder**
In ➔ Folder Setting ➔
Select folder ➔

---

**Advanced**
Display Settings (P.13-3 - 13-4)
Custom Screens

Downloading Custom Screens
Follow these steps to download a Custom Screen using handset.
Read information (price, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

1. Data Folder
   - Custom Screens

2. Download Custom Screens
   - Handset connects to the Internet and Custom Screens Menu appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Starting Download from Introduction Page
In Custom Screens Menu, select Custom Screen

1. Yes

Purchasing Contents Keys
To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Contents Keys to handset.

1. In Custom Screens menu, (select Custom Screen)

Custom Screen Setup

1. In Custom Screens menu, (select Custom Screen)

   - Custom Screens Title

2. Select one without ¥.

Applying Preset Custom Screens
- Settings
- Phone Settings
- Custom Screens
- Preset Screens
- Select pattern

Advanced

- Accessing Source Sites
- Loading Interface Based on Previous Handsets (P.2-25)
Customizing Handset Responses

**Ringtone**

1. Settings ➔ Phone Settings
2. Sounds & Alerts ➔ ●
3. Sounds & Alerts Menu
4. Ringtone/videos ➔ ●
5. Ringtone/videos Menu
6. Select folder ➔ ●
7. Select tone/file ➔ ●

**Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions**

In 5, Videos ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●
If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
- Start point selection window opens.
- Follow these steps to proceed.
- Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
- A confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press ● to proceed.

**Vibration**

1. In Sounds & Alerts menu, Vibration ➔ ●
2. Switch On/Off ➔ ●
3. On ➔ ●
4. Vibration Pattern ➔ ●
5. Select pattern ➔ ●

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

In 6, Link to Sound ➔ ●
Precaution
- Cancel Vibration before connecting AC Charger to help avoid accidents.

**Advanced**

- Setting Incoming Mail Ring Time (P.2-25)
- System Sound ➔ Additional Sound Setting (P.13-5)
Characters

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.

Text Entry Window
(Message Text)

Opening Help

Switching Entry Modes

Entry Mode List

Available entry modes appear.

Select mode ➤ ☞

Entry Mode Indicators:

- Kanji (hiragana)
- Single/double-byte katakana
- Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
- Single-byte number
- Character Code

To enter characters assigned to the same key, press ☞ first.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter 01.

Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press 13 three times.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press 13 three times.

Press ☞ to toggle options in reverse.

Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.
**Entering Characters**

**Hiragana**
Follow these steps to enter ひら in kanji (hiragana) mode.

1. Enter ひら and press рабатыва.
   - In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is entered.

2. To exit suggestion list, press そこで．

**Kanji**
Convert ひら to  мен.

1. Enter ひら and press рабатыва．

**When Target Word is Not Listed**
- Press そこで or そこで to segment hiragana to convert separately.

**Phonetic Conversion**
Enter reading in hiragana рабатыва．

**Selecting Multiple Converted Words**

**One-Hiragana Conversion**
Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: ひら was previously selected after conversion.

1. Enter ひら and press рабатыва．

2. Select word/phrase рабатыва．

**Advanced**
- Inserting Line Breaks
- Inserting Spaces
- Using Character Codes

- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Showing suggestions in single column
Text Entry

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter ジョン.

1. &ΞΠ΢

2. %

3. (γ)

4. (δ)

5. 88

6. (Ϣ)

7. ’(ϡ)

8. 000

9. (%)

May not be available depending on the entry mode.

1. In single-byte modes, Symbol List appears. To open Pictogram List, press B.

2. or B List toggles

3. Select Symbol/Pictogram

4. Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

5. List closes

Emoticons

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

1. In kanji (hiragana) mode, enter 臼 or a descriptive word such as .Keys or EventManager, then convert the entry.

2. Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as .Keys or KeyEvent, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.
Basic Operations

Text Entry

Enter .co.jp, http://, etc., easily.

1

Quick Address List

2

Select extension

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter PTA

Use Keypad inscriptions.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

- Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row appear.

(Suggestions are preset by time blocks.)

One Hiragana Word Call

- Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter 経電

1

Select word/phrase

2

Select word/phrase

1

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter PTA

Use Keypad inscriptions.

2

Select extension

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.
Text Entry

Editing Characters

Deleting & Editing

1 Select character

- The highlighted character is deleted.

2 Select target location

Enter characters

Recovering Deleted Characters
- Press \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) once for each character after deletion to recover up to 64 characters. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)

Deleting All Text
- Long Press \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) at the end of text. To delete characters after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \).

Jumping to the End or Top of Text
- \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \)

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \)

Select first character

- To change the start point, press \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \).

2 Select end point

3 Select target location (Long)

- Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text
- \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Green}{\text{B}}} \)

Select target location

- \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \) \( \text{\textcolor{Red}{\text{R}}} \)

Paste

Select text

- Available when Paste List appears.
Saving Frequently Used Words

Saving Words (Japanese)
Saved words appear among suggestions.

1  SETTINGS  Phone Settings  User Dictionary

2 New Entry  Enter word

3 Enter reading

920SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)
Download specialized 920SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site. Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions. Some dictionary files may not be usable.

1 In User Dictionary menu, Acquire Dictionary

2 Select number  Select dictionary

Existing dictionary is replaced.

Advanced
Editing Entries  Deleting Entries (P.2-26)
Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1. **Phone Book Entry Window**

2. **Last Name:**
   - Enter last name
   - **First Name:**
   - Enter first name

   - Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3. **Add Phone Number:**
   - Enter phone number
   - Select icon

4. **Add Email Address:**
   - Enter mail address
   - Select icon

5. **Category:**
   - Select Category

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat 3.
- To save additional mail addresses, repeat 4.

Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Phone Book Memory Status

- Phone Book
- Manage Entries
- Memory Status
Customizing Handset Responses

Picture

1. In Phone Book entry window, Picture: 

2. Assign Picture: 
   - Select image:

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

1. In Phone Book entry window, (select item, e.g., Tone/Video for Voice Call):

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

1. In Phone Book entry window, Secret:

Assign Tone:

2. Select folder:
   - Select tone/file:

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.

1. When confirmation appears, Yes:

As New Entry:

2. On:
   - Complete other fields:

Saving to an Existing Entry

In As New Detail:
   - Select entry:
   - Complete other fields:

Advanced

- Setting Captured Image as Picture
- Changing default storage media for new entries
- Changing Light Color/Vibration Pattern
- Setting Incoming Mail Ring Time
- Customizing Response by Category (P.2-27)
- Hiding confirmation after calls with unsaved numbers (P.13-6)
Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

1. Specify katakana row

   - Search method: **By a-ka-ta-na**

2. Select entry

3. Select phone number

   Using Other Options
   - In **Select option**

Advanced

- Messaging via Phone Book
- Editing Phone Book Entries
- Deleting Phone Book Entries
- Renaming Categories
- Moving Categories
- Switching reference Phone Book (P.13-6)

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.

1. **Phone Book**

2. Select entry

3. Select phone number or mail address

   - Recipient is entered.
   - Omit if only one number or address is saved.

Changing Search Method

- **Ph.Book Settings**

1. In entry search window

2. **Sort Entries**

3. **Select method**

   - Phone Book Search Methods:
     - **By Reading**: Shows entries that start with specified Reading
     - **By Category**: Opens entries in the specified Category
     - **By a-ka-ta-na**: Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

Opening from Other Functions

- **Select Recipient Window**

Entry search window opens.

- **Select entry**

Entry search window opens.

- **Select phone number or mail address**

Entry search window opens.

- **Select option**

   - Recipient is entered.
   - Omit if only one number or address is saved.
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

1. Phone Mail Groups
   - Mail Group Entry Window

2. <Add New Group> 
   - Enter name 
   - Select Group

3. <Assign New Entry> 
   - Select entry

4. Select phone number or mail address

- To add more members, repeat 3 - 4.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

- Renaming Mail Groups
- Deleting Mail Groups/Group Members
- Changing Mail Group Members (P.2-28)
## Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

### Preset Folders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pictures*</td>
<td>Still images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCIM</td>
<td>Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to SD/DCIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Pictograms*</td>
<td>Downloaded Pictograms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ring Songs-Tones*</td>
<td>Downloaded melodies and other sound files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Appli*</td>
<td>S! Applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music*</td>
<td>Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videos*</td>
<td>Video images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle-Appli</td>
<td>Lifestyle-Appli required to use S! FeliCa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books*</td>
<td>Downloaded e-Books, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Screens*</td>
<td>Custom Screens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash®</td>
<td>Downloaded Flash® (animation) files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash® Ringtones</td>
<td>Downloaded Flash® ringtones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Documents</td>
<td>Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly.

### Memory Status

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full. To check memory usage status, follow these steps.

1. Press Menu 
2. **Data Folder**
3. **Memory Status**
4. **Phone Memory or Memory Card**
Opening Files

1 Data Folder

- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.

2 Select folder

- To open a sub folder, select it and press (select file).

3 Select file

- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press (select file).

Slide Show

All images in Pictures or DCIM folder appear sequentially.

1 In file list, (select file)

Slide Show starts.

2 Slide Show

- Slide Show starts.

3 Slide Show stops

Changing Interval

After (select file), Speed (select speed)
- When Speed is set to Manual, press (select speed) to advance or reverse frames.

Mail Attachments

After (select file), Send (As Message)
- When a size list appears, select attachment size and press (select file).

Copyright Protected Files

- Some functions may not be available for copyright protected files (© or ®).

Advanced

Switching File List View
Using Files as Wallpaper
Using Files as Ringtones (P.2-29)
Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders
1. (select folder) Data Folder
2. Manage Items

Moving Files
Some files may not be moved.
1. In file list, (select file)
2. Move Phone or Memory Card
3. Select folder
4. Move here

When Moving Files Used for Wallpaper
- A confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press to proceed.

Copying Files
- [File List] (select file)
- Copy Phone or Memory Card
- Copy here

Selecting Multiple Files
1. In file list, (select file)

- Repeat as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with and press .)

Hiding Folders
Restrict access to created folders. Only handset folders can be hidden.
1. In file list, (select folder)

2. (select folder) Set Secret
- Enter Handset Code

Opening Secret Folders
- [File List] (select folder)
- Unlock Temporarily
- Enter Handset Code

Advanced
- Renaming Files/Folders
- Sorting Files
- Canceling Secret
- Deleting Files & Folders (P.2-29)
Using Memory Card

Save files to microSD™ Memory Card (hereinafter “Memory Card”) to organize handset files.
Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see P.14-21 “microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility.”

**Inserting & Removing**

1. **Open cover**
   - Turn handset power off first.
   - Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.

2. **Insert card**
   - With logo side up, insert card until it clicks.
   - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3. **Close cover**
   - Rotate to replace cover.
   - If 📜 appears after powering on handset, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.

**Removing Memory Card**

Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.

**Precautions**

- microSD™ Memory Card has no write protect switch. Files may be accidentally erased or overwritten.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

To cancel, choose No and press .

Important Memory Card Usage Notes:
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 920SH.
**Display & Sounds**

**User Shortcuts**

- Customizing Shortcuts
  - Changing Default Shortcuts
    - Pressing in Standby opens Calendar.
  - Changing Item Order
    - Follow onscreen instructions.

**Standby Window**

- Changing Display Option
  - Showing Constantly
    - Follow onscreen instructions.

**Loading Interface Based on Previous Handsets**

- Downloading S! Familiar Usability
  - Follow onscreen instructions.

**Ringtones**

- Setting Incoming Mail Ring Time
  - For New Message
    - Enter time
  - For Other
    - Enter time
Phone Book Entry Items

Phone Book Entry

Setting Captured Image as Picture

- [Phone Book Entry Window] P.2-16
  - Take Picture
  - Frame image on Display

Changing Light Color/Vibration Pattern

- Light Color
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Select item, e.g., Light for Voice Call
    - Switch On/Off
    - Select option
    - Light Color
  - To return to Phone Book entry window, press $.

- Vibration Pattern
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Select item, e.g., Vibration for New Message
    - Switch On/Off
    - Select option
    - Vibration Pattern
  - To return to Phone Book entry window, press $.

Saving Other Information

- Address
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Select item
  - Complete fields

- Homepage
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Enter URL

- Note
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Enter text

- Birthday
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Enter date

Customizing Response by Category

- Category Control
  - [Phone Book Entry Window] Select item
  - Customize responses

- Handset response settings for Phone Book entries take priority.

Phone Book Operations

Messaging via Phone Book

- Phone Numbers
  - [Entry Details] Select number
  - Create Message
  - S/Mail or SMS
  - Complete message

- Mail Addresses
  - [Entry Details] Select address
  - Complete message
Additional Functions

Phone Book Entries

Managing Entries

Editing Phone Book Entries

[Entry Search Window] Select entry
Select item Edit

Edit Reading after editing names.

Deleting Phone Book Entries

One Entry

[Entry Search Window] Select entry Delete

All Entries

Manage Entries Delete All Select entry type
Enter Handset Code

Renaming Categories

[Entry Search Window] Phone
Category Control
Select handset or USIM
Select Category Edit
Enter name

Moving Categories

[Entry Search Window] Phone
Category Control
Select handset or USIM
Select Category
Select target location

View for By Category Phone Book change accordingly.

Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups

[Mail Group Entry Window] Select Group
Edit Name Enter name

Deleting Mail Groups/Group Members

[Mail Group Entry Window] Select Group Delete
Enter Handset Code

Group Members

[Mail Group Entry Window] Select Group Delete
Remove Entry

Changing Mail Group Members

[Mail Group Entry Window] Select Group Re-assign Entry
Select entry

## Data Folder Contents

### Handling Files
- **Switching File List View**
  - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Manage Items
  - \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Change List View
  - \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Select option

### Managing Files/Folders
- **Renaming Files/Folders**
  - **Folder Names**
    - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select folder
    - \(\Rightarrow\) Manage Items
    - Rename
    - \(\Rightarrow\) Enter name
  - **File Names**
    - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select file
    - \(\Rightarrow\) Manage Items
    - Rename
    - \(\Rightarrow\) Enter name
  - Renaming folders with files used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.

### Using Files as Wallpaper
- [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select file
- \(\Rightarrow\) Set as Wallpaper
- Vertical or Horizontal
- For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press \(\Rightarrow\).

### Using Files as Ringtones
- [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select file
- \(\Rightarrow\) Set as Ringtone

### Sorting Files
- [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Manage Items
- \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Sort
- Select method

### Canceling Secret
- Unlock Secret folders temporarily and \(\Rightarrow\) (select Secret folder)
- \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Unset Secret
- \(\Rightarrow\) Enter Handset Code

### Deleting Files & Folders
- **Folders**
  - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select folder
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Delete
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Enter Handset Code
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Yes
- **Single Files**
  - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Select file
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Delete
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Yes
- **All Created Folders & Files**
  - [File List] \(\Rightarrow\) Manage Items
  - \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Delete All
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Enter Handset Code
  - \(\Rightarrow\) Yes

- To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.
Voice Calling

Placing a Voice Call
1. Enter phone number with area code

![Dial Window]

- Handset dials the number.
- Voice Call Window

3. Call ends

Correcting Numbers
- In (move cursor under the digit) [ 
- Long Press [ ] to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Earpiece Volume During a call, [ ] (up) or [ ] (down)
- After Calls with Unsaved Numbers Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing an International Call
Apply for International Call Service beforehand.
1. Enter phone number with area code

2. Int’l Call

3. Select country

4. Call ends

Calling Unlisted Countries
- In [ ], Enter Code [ ] Enter country code

Advanced
- Calling Previously Dialed Numbers (Redial)
- Calling from Received Calls
- Sending/Blocking Caller ID
- Adjusting Earpiece Volume
- Talking through Speaker
- Placing Calls on Hold
- Muting Microphone
- Switching Sound Output
- Recording Caller Voice

- Setting handset to beep once each minute during calls
- Showing Call Cost after each call
- Hiding Call Time during calls

Country Code List
- [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]
- [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]
- [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]
Placing Calls While Abroad
See below to place a call to Japan from abroad.
Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand.

1. Enter phone number with area code 🇯🇵

2. 🇯🇵 Int’l Call 🛡️ 🇯🇵 🇯🇵 🇯🇵 🇯🇵
- Handset dials the number.

3. 🇯🇵 Call ends

Calling SoftBank Handsets
- In 🇨🇿, always select 🇯🇵 (JPN).
- Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country
- Perform steps in “Placing a Voice Call” on P.3-2.

Answering a Voice Call
Incoming Call window opens for a call.

1. 🇯🇵 to accept the call

2. 🇯🇵 Call ends

Muting Ringer Temporarily
While handset is ringing, 🇯🇵

Answer Phone
Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1. 🇯🇵 (Long)

Canceling Answer Phone 🇯🇵 (Long)
- 🇯🇵 disappears.

- When Answer Phone is Active
For unanswered calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
- When recording ends, 🇯🇵 appears.
- If the call is answered during recording, no message will be saved.

Playing Messages
- 🇯🇵 Replay/
- 🇯🇵 Skip Backward
- 🇯🇵 Stop
- 🇯🇵 Skip Forward 🇯🇵 or 🇯🇵
- 🇯🇵 Delete 🇯🇵 🇯🇵 Yes 🇯🇵 🇯🇵

- 🇯钚 errno 3 Playback 🇯钚 03/18/18 15:56 🇯钚
- 🇯钚 Playback ends automatically after all messages have played.

Playback Operations
- 🇯钚 Activating auto call answer when Display is rotated from Cycloid to portrait position 🇯钚 (P.13-7)

Advanced
- 🇯钚 Rejecting Calls 🇯钚 Placing Calls on Hold 🇯钚 Answering with Headphones 🇯钚 Recording Caller Messages (Answer Phone) 🇯钚 (P.3-10)
- 🇯钚 Activating auto call answer when Display is rotated from Cycloid to portrait position 🇯钚 (P.13-7)
Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets.

- 920SH has no internal camera; use External Camera to send Outgoing Image.

Press % to toggle image view.

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Placing a Video Call

1. Enter number ➔ (Long)

Answering a Video Call

1. ➔ to accept the call

   • Saved Alternative Image is sent.

2. ➔ Call ends

Answering with Camera Image

- In ➔ ➔ No ➔ ➔
- Toggling Camera/Alternative Image

Viewing Engaged Video Call Operations

After ➔ ➔ Help ➔ ➔

After Calls with Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Advanced

- Rejecting Calls
- Placing Calls on Hold
- Answering with Headphones
- Answering Video Calls Automatically
- Talking through Speaker
- Placing Calls on Hold
- Muting Microphone
- Switching Sound Output (P.3-10 - 3-11)
- Changing Alternative Image
- Changing quality of Incoming Images
- Changing quality of Outgoing Images
- Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Calls (P.13-7)
Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers
Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialing.

1  \( \text{Speed Dial List} \)  \( \text{Phone} \)  \( \text{Speed Dial} \)  \( \text{Number} \)

2  \( \text{Select number} \)  \( \text{Select entry} \)  \( \text{Select phone number} \)
   - To save additional phone numbers, repeat \( \text{Select phone number} \).
   - Omit \( \text{Select phone number} \) if only one number is saved.

3  \( \text{Select phone number} \)
   - To place Video Calls, Long Press \( \text{Speed Dial} \).

When Selected List Number is in Use
- Confirmation appears. To overwrite, choose \( \text{Yes} \) and press \( \text{Speed Dial} \).

Using Headphones for Speed Dial
- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in \( \text{Speed Dial} \). To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.

Using Speed Dial
- \( \text{Speed Dial} \) - \( \text{Speed Dial} \) - \( \text{Speed Dial} \) - \( \text{Speed Dial} \).

Advanced
- \( \text{Deleting Entries} \) (P.3-11)
Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 Call Log Window
   - All Calls opens; press  to open Dialed Numbers and then Received Calls.

2 Select record ➤

When the Same Number is Dialed More Than Once
   - Only the last record appears. (All records appear for Circle Talk.)
Call Time & Call Cost

Call Time
Check estimated time of the most recent call or all calls.

1. Settings ➔ Call/Video Call

2. Call Time & Cost ➔

3. Call Timers ➔

4. Select item ➔

Call Cost
Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls. Call Costs (including Max Cost) may not be available depending on subscription status.

1. In Call Time & Cost menu, Call Costs ➔

2. Select item ➔

Advanced
Reseting Call Timers ➔ Resetting Call Costs (P.3-12)

Checking the most recent packet transmission volume ➔ Checking all packet transmission volume (P.13-7)
Optional Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Forwarding</td>
<td>Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voicemail</td>
<td>Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Waiting*</td>
<td>Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference Call*</td>
<td>Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Barring</td>
<td>Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caller ID</td>
<td>Show or hide your own number when placing calls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* A separate contract is required.

### Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (No Answer set). Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

1. **Settings**
   - **Call/Video Call**

2. **Voicemail/Divert**

3. **Diverts**
   - **Select call type**

4. **No Answer**

5. **Phone Book**
   - **Select entry**

6. **Select phone number**
   - **Select entry**
   - *Omit if only one number is saved.*

7. **Select ring time**

---

**Diverting Calls without Handset Response**

- **In**, **Always**
- **Entering Forwarding Number Directly**
- **In**, **Enter Number**
- **Enter phone number**
- **Select ring time**

---

**Advanced**

- **Checking Service Status** (P.3-12)
Optional Services

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (No Answer set). Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

1. In Voicemail/Divert menu, select Voicemail and Activate.
2. No Answer
   Select ring time
   Diverting Calls without Handset Response

Missed Call Notification
Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

1. In Call/Video Call menu, select Missed Calls.
   Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

1. In Call/Video Call menu, select Phone and Call Voicemail.
   Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

New Voicemail Message
● A appears, and disappears after the message is checked from handset.

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (No Answer set).

1. In Voicemail/Divert menu, select Activate.

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

1. In Voicemail/Divert menu, select Cancel All.

Advanced

[Call Waiting (Separate Contract Required)]
Activating Call Waiting
Placing Line 1 on Hold to Answer Line 2
[Conference Call (Separate Contract Required)]
Opening Another Line during a Call
Switching Between Two Open Lines (Swap Calls)
Talking on Multiple Lines Simultaneously

[Call Barring]
Rejecting Calls by Number
Rejecting Calls without Designating Numbers
Changing Network Password
[Caller ID]
Showing/Hiding Caller ID
Additional Functions

Placing a Voice/Video Call

1. Press Menu (Voice Call) or (Video Call) from the Call Log, Phone Book, or Main Menu.
2. Select Record to record the call.
3. To end the call, press the End Call button until a beep sounds.

Answering a Voice/Video Call

1. Select Answer to answer the call.

Rejecting Calls

1. Select Reject to reject the call.

Placing Calls on Hold

1. Select Place on Hold to place the call on hold.

Answering with Headphones

1. Select Answer to answer the call with headphones.

Recording Caller Messages (Answer Phone)

1. Select Record to record the caller's message.

Activating Remote Monitor

1. Select Remote Monitor to activate the remote monitor.

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

1. Select Earpiece Volume to adjust the earpiece volume.

Sending/Blocking Caller ID

1. Select Send/Block to send or block the caller's ID.

Receiving a Voice/Video Call

1. Select Receive to receive the call.

Calling Previously Dialed Numbers

1. Select Redial to call a previously dialed number.

Calling from Received Calls

1. Select Call from Received List to call a number from the received calls list.

Saving Numbers to Auto Answer List

For From Call Log, omit the steps for selecting Phone Book entry.

To enter a phone number directly, select <Empty> and press %.

Remote Monitor

Remote Monitor is effective only when the handset is open.

Sending Blocking Caller ID

1. Select Send Blocking Caller ID to send a blocking caller ID.

Calling Received Calls

1. Select Call from Received List to call a number from the received calls list.
3Callin

**Additional Functions**

**Call Window Operations**

- **Talking through Speaker**
  - Voice Call
    - [Voice Call Window] \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
    - To cancel, press \( \text{TO} \).
  - Video Call
    - [Video Call Window] \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
    - Loudspeaker On \( \text{TO} \)

- **Placing Calls on Hold**
  - [Call Window] \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - To place Voice Calls on hold, subscription to Call Waiting or Conference Call is required.
  - To re-engage in Voice Calls, press \( \text{TO} \), select Retrieve and press \( \text{TO} \).
  - To re-engage in Video Calls, press \( \text{TO} \).

- **Muting Microphone**
  - [Call Window] \( \text{TO} \)
  - To cancel, press \( \text{TO} \).

- **Switching Sound Output**
  - [Call Window] \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Transfer Audio \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) To Phone or To Bluetooth \( \text{TO} \)

- **Recording Caller Voice**
  - [Voice Call Window] \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Record Caller Voice \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Recording starts \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Recording ends \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - To play recorded messages, see P.3-3 "Playing Messages."

- **Deleting Entries**
  - [Speed Dial List] \( \text{TO} \) Select entry \( \text{TO} \)
  - \( \text{TO} \) Delete \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Yes \( \text{TO} \)

  - Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.

- **Sending Messages**
  - [Call Log Window] \( \text{TO} \) Select record \( \text{TO} \)
  - Create Message \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)

- **Saving Phone Book Entries**
  - [Call Log Window] \( \text{TO} \) Select record \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - Save to Phone Book \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \) \( \text{TO} \)
  - As New Entry \( \text{TO} \)
  - Complete other fields \( \text{TO} \)

  - To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
Additional Functions

Deleting Call Log

- One Record
  - [Call Log Window] Select record → Yes
  - Delete → Yes
- All Records
  - [Call Log Window] Delete All → Yes

Resetting Call Timers

- [Call Timers Menu] Clear Timers → Enter Handset Code
  → Yes

Resetting Call Costs

- [Call Costs Menu] Clear Costs
  → Enter PIN2 → Yes

Optional Services

Service Status

- [Call/Video Call Menu] Select service → Status

Checking Service Status

- For Call Barring, select restriction and press %.

Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting

- [Call/Video Call Menu] Call Waiting → On

Placing Line 1 on Hold to Answer Line 2

- [Voice Call Window] A tone sounds during a call
  - Press % to switch between two lines.
  - Press % to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

Conference Call (Contract Required)

Opening Another Line during a Call

- [Voice Call Window] Enter phone number
  - Press % to select from Call Log.

Switching Between Two Open Lines (Swap Calls)

- Press % to switch between two lines.

Talking on Multiple Lines Simultaneously

- [Voice Call Window] While switching between lines, Multi Party
  - Conference All

Optional Services

Service Status

- [Call/Video Call Menu] Select service → Status

Checking Service Status

- For Call Barring, select restriction and press %.

Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting

- [Call/Video Call Menu] Call Waiting → On

Placing Line 1 on Hold to Answer Line 2

- [Voice Call Window] A tone sounds during a call
  - Press % to switch between two lines.
  - Press % to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.
Additional Functions

Call Barring
- Rejecting Calls by Number
  - Saving Phone Numbers
    - Call Barring
    - Rejected Numbers
    - Black List
    - Set Reject Number
    - <Empty>
    - Enter phone number
  - Activate Black List to reject calls from saved phone numbers.
- Activating Black List
  - Call Barring
  - Rejected Numbers
  - Switch On/Off
- Rejecting Calls without Designating Numbers
- Calls from Unsaved Numbers
  - Call Barring
  - Rejected Numbers
  - Unknown

Calls without Caller ID
- Call Barring
- Rejected Numbers
- Withheld
- On

Caller ID
- Showing/Hiding Caller ID
  - Call Barring
  - Rejected Numbers
  - On or Off

Calls from Public Phones
- Call Barring
- Rejected Numbers
- Payphone
- On

Calls with Undisplayable Caller ID
- Call Barring
- Rejected Numbers
- Unavailable
- On

Changing Network Password
- Call Barring
- Change NW Password
- Enter current Network Password
- Enter new Network Password
- Re-enter new Network Password
Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

920SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Restriction</th>
<th>Emergency Calls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Max Cost</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Lock (P.11-2)</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing Calls</td>
<td>Not possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offline Mode (P.1-12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad Lock (P.1-9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Entry (P.11-2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emergency Calls Overseas

- Emergency calls may not be possible when outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/radio signals available in the country or handset settings.
Messaging

Use SMS and S! Mail for messaging.

**SMS**
- Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with other SoftBank handsets.

**S! Mail**
- Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets or other devices; attach media files, etc.
  - **Arrange Mail**
    - Select font color, font size, background color; insert images, My Pictograms, and more.
  - **Feeling Mail**
    - Set emotion to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly.

### Available Entry Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Attachment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMS</td>
<td>Available*</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Available</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Mail</td>
<td>Available</td>
<td>Available</td>
<td>Available</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.14-21).

### Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

### Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset automatically resends unsent messages up to two times. Cancel to disable (P.13-8).
Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address. For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.14-21).

Changing Address

1 🈚️ 🈛️ Settings 🈛️ 🈚️

2 🈚️ Address Settings 🈛️ 🈚️

• Handset connects to the Internet. Select English and press 🈛️, then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, new address confirmation from SoftBank arrives.

To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 🈛️ Message 🈛️ 🈛️

2 🈛️ Information 🈛️ 🈛️

3 Yes 🈛️ 🈛️

4 🈛️
Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book.

1. Create Message
2. Select recipient field
3. Phone Book
4. Select recipient
5. Select number or address
6. Select subject field
7. Text
8. Enter message
9. Transmission starts

Advanced

- Using Other Recipient Entry Methods
- Adding Recipients
- Checking Cross-Carrier Pictograms
- Previewing Outgoing Message
- Inserting Signature Automatically
- Speed Mail List
- Saving without Sending
- Auto Send when Signal Returns
- Designating Send Date/Time
- Canceling Sent S! Mail
- Requesting Delivery Confirmation
- Other Messaging Settings (P.4-8 - 4-9)

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
• Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages (P.13-8)

Hiding progress bar while sending messages

Other Messaging Settings (P.4-8 - 4-9)
Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail.

Send attachments to compatible handsets.

1. In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, 😘 Attach

2. 📧 Attach File 😘

3. 📷 Picture 😘
   - 😘 Select folder 😘

4. 😘 Select file 😘
   - When a size list appears, select attachment size and press 😘.

5. 🟢 Transmission starts

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In 😘, select a folder other than Picture and press 😘, then select a file.

Sending Feeling Mail

1. In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, 😘
   - 😘 Feeling Settings 😘

2. 😘 Select category, e.g., Happy/Glad 😘

3. 😘 Select item, e.g., I Love You 😘

4. 🟢 Transmission starts

Attaching Files

Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail.

Send attachments to compatible handsets.

1. In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, 😘 Attach

2. 📧 Attach File 😘

3. 📷 Picture 😘
   - 😘 Select folder 😘

4. 😘 Select file 😘
   - When a size list appears, select attachment size and press 😘.

5. 🟢 Transmission starts

Sending Feeling Mail

1. In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, 😘
   - 😘 Feeling Settings 😘

2. 😘 Select category, e.g., Happy/Glad 😘

3. 😘 Select item, e.g., I Love You 😘

4. 🟢 Transmission starts

Advanced

- 😘 Set Auto Play File (P.4-9)
Follow these steps to:
- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1. In text entry window, (Long) In text entry window, (Long)

2. Font Size:  

3. Select size  
Enter text

4. Background Colour:  

5. Insert Picture  

6. Select location  

7. Insert My Pictogram  

8. Effect  

9. Scrolling  

10. Select direction  

11. Transmission starts

Advanced

Creating Arrange Mail from Templates  
Changing Text Color, Size & Effect  
Using Other Arrange Menu Items (P.4-9)  

Only the message text is saved.

Canceling Last Action
[Arrange Mail Window] Undo  
Canceling All Arrange Mail Settings
[Arrange Mail Window] Cancel  
Yes  

Saving as Templates
After  
Save as Template  
Enter name  
Save here  

Transmission starts
Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book.

1. **Create New SMS**

2. **Select recipient field**

3. **Phone Book**

4. **Select recipient**

5. **Select number**

6. **Select message text field**

7. **Transmission starts**

**Advanced**

- Using Other Recipient Entry Methods
- Adding Recipients
- Checking Cross-Carrier Pictograms
- Speed Mail List
- Saving without Sending
- Auto Send when Signal Returns
- Designating Send Date/Time
- Requesting Delivery Confirmation

**Incoming Calls while Creating Message**

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.
- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to SI Mail, follow these steps.

**When Message Text Exceeds Limit**

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to SI Mail, follow these steps.
Requesting Delivery Confirmation

- Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered.

Other Messaging Settings

- Available items:
  - Priority: Set message priority
  - Set Auto Delete: Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read
  - Reply Request: Set to show a reply request
  - Forward/Delete NG: Set to show a do not forward/delete request
  - Quiz: Set up a question; recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message
  - Reply to Settings: Designate a different mail address for receiving replies
  - Expiry Time: Set SMS Server sent message storage limit

Attachments

- Set Auto Play File

Arrange Mail

Creating Arrange Mail from Templates

- Opening Templates from Messaging Menu
  - [Mail Composition Window] Select item
  - Templates
  - Select template
  - Complete message

- Opening Templates from SI Mail Composition Window
  - [SI Mail Composition Window] Launch Template
  - Select template
  - Complete message

Changing Text Color, Size & Effect

- [Arrange Mail Window] Set start point
- Select end point
- Font Colour, Font Size: or Effect
- Set

Using Other Arrange Menu Items

- Available items:
  - Font Colour: Change font color
  - Insert BGM Sound: Insert background sound
  - Insert Flash: Insert Flash® file
  - Insert Line: Insert horizontal line
  - Blink: Flash text
  - Alignment: Align text
Opening & Replying

Incoming Messages

Opening New Messages
Information window opens for new mail.

By default, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan.

Delivery Report
Information window opens for Delivery Reports. Follow these steps to open report.

Select message
Message text appears in 3D animation (3D Pictogram).

Select 3D Pictogram option
Depending on settings, Small Light, Vibration, and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images
Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz
Enter or select answer. Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View
When a specific Pictogram is included in message text, corresponding animation appears in background of message window.

Receiving Feeling Mail
Small Light, Vibration, and ringtone respond according to settings. Corresponding Pictogram appears on External Display.

Attached Images
Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz
Enter or select answer. Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View
When a specific Pictogram is included in message text, corresponding animation appears in background of message window.

Advanced
Viewing New Messages on External Display
Opening New Mail Out of Standby
Retrieving New Mail Manually
Retrieving Server Mail List
Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Feeling Mail
3D Pictogram
Disabling Animation View
Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan
Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad
Disabling image auto-resize
Disabling image auto-open
Enabling sound auto-play

P.4-12
P.13-8 - 13-9
4 Messaging

4-11 Incoming Messages

1 Received Msg.

- Rotate Display to Cycloid position to open message list of the highlighted folder in the right half of Display. Use 3 to select folder list or message list.

2 Select folder

- Select message

Message Window

- Press ( to open previous message (older one), or press to open next one (newer one).

Replying to Messages

1 In message window,

2 Complete message

Advanced

- Sorting Messages
- Changing Font Size
- Using Linked Info
- Saving to Phone Book
- Copying Text
- Replying to Sender and All Recipients
- Quoting Original Message Text
- Replying Quickly Using Fixed Text
- Changing message list view
- Changing message window scroll unit
Handling Incoming Messages

- **Receiving/Opening Messages**
  - Viewing New Messages on External Display
    - Available with handset closed.
  - Opening New Mail Out of Standby (Long)
  - Retrieving New Mail Manually
    - Retrieve New Msg.
  - Retrieving Server Mail List
    - Server Mail Box
    - Mail List

- **Attachments**
  - Saving Attachments to Data Folder
    - Select file
    - Save to Data Folder
    - Enter name
    - Save here

- **Message Window**
  - Changing Font Size
    - Select size

- **Linked Info**
  - Using Linked Info

- **Dialing Numbers**
  - Select number
  - Call or Video Call

- **Sending Messages**
  - Select number or mail address
  - Create Message
  - Select number or mail address
  - Complete message

- **Accessing Internet Sites**
  - Select URL

For mail addresses, omit the steps for selecting mail type. Select PC Site Br. to connect via PC Site Browser.
Handling Incoming Messages

- **Saving to Phone Book**
  - **Saving Sender's Address**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ☑️ Select number or mail address ☑️ As New Entry ☑️ Complete other fields ☑️
      - To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
  - **Saving Linked Info**
    - [Message Window] ✄ Select number or mail address ✄ Save to Phone Book or Save Address ✄
      - ☑️ As New Entry ☑️ Complete other fields ☑️
      - To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.

- **Copying Text**
  - **Sender/Recipient Number/Address**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ✄ Select number ☑️ Address ☑️
  - **Subject or Message Text**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ✄ Select text ☑️ Subject or Message Text ☑️
      - ☑️ Select first character ☑️
      - ☑️ Select end point ☑️

- **Replying to Messages**
  - **Replying to Sender and All Recipients**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ✄ Select option ☑️ Complete message ☑️
  - **Quoting Original Message Text**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ✄ Select number or mail address ✄ Save to Phone Book or Save Address ✄
      - ☑️ As New Entry ☑️ Complete other fields ☑️
  - **Replying Quickly Using Fixed Text**
    - [Message Window] 
      - ✄ Select text ☑️ Edit text ☑️

- **Editing Quick Reply Text**
  - ✄ Settings ✄ General Settings ✄ Quick Reply Set. ✄ Select text ✄ Edit text

- **Using Quick Reply**
  - [Message Window] ✄ (Long) ✄ Select text ✄
Managing & Using Messages

**Messaging Folders**
Messages are organized in folders by type.

- Received Messages
- Incomplete/Unsent Messages
- Sent Messages
- Failed Messages

**Auto Delete**
- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

**Checking Messages**

1. Select folder
2. Select message

**Hiding Folders**

1. Unlock Temporarily
2. Enter Handset Code
3. Set Secret

**Advanced**
- Deleting Messages
- Protecting Messages
- Selecting Multiple Messages
- Forwarding Messages
- Sending from Drafts
- Sending Unsent Messages
- Using Sent Messages
- Opening Sender/Recipient Details
- Renaming Folders
- Deleting Folders
- Adding Folders
- Canceling Secret (P.4-17 - 4-18)
**Handling Messages**

**Sorting Messages into Designated Folders**

1. **Sort by Sender/Recipient**
   - Receives or Sent Messages

2. **Select target folder**

3. **My Folders**
   - Select blank entry

4. **Address**

5. **Select method**
   - Select/enter number/address

6. **Saved**

**Filtering Spam**

Filter spam (messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book) into Spam Folder.

1. **Settings**
   - General Settings

2. **Anti Spam Measures**

3. **On**

4. **Enter Handset Code**

**Advanced**

- Re-sorting Messages
- Moving Messages Manually (P.4-18)
Using Chat Folders
Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.

1. Chat Folder
2. Select folder
3. Add New Member
4. Select blank entry
5. Select method
6. Select message

Saving Members
- Chat Folder List
- Chat Folder

Deleting Members
- In (select member) 
- Change Member 
- From

Opening Chat Folders
- Select folder

Advanced
- Renaming Folders
- Adding Folders
- Re-sorting Messages
- Deleting Folders
- Deleting All Messages
- Resetting Chat Folders

(P.4-18)
Managing Messages

Deleting Messages

- One Message
  - [Message List] Select message
  - Alternatively, delete an open message.

- All Unprotected Messages
  - [Message List] Manage Message
  - [Message List] Delete All
  - Except Locked Message
  - Enter Handset Code

- All Messages
  - [Message List] Manage Message
  - [Message List] Delete All
  - Enter Handset Code

- All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages
  - [Message List (Drafts or Unsent Messages)] Delete All
  - Enter Handset Code

Protecting Messages

- [Message List] Select message

Selecting Multiple Messages

- Selecting
  - [Message List] Select message

- Unchecking
  - [Message List] Unselect message

Using Messages

Forwarding Messages

- [Message Window] Forward
  - Select recipient field
  - Select method
  - Select/enter number/address

- Attached files are forwarded.

- To forward SMS messages, select SF Mail or SMS and press.

Sending from Drafts

- [Message List] Select message
  - Complete message

Sending Unsent Messages

- [Message List (Unsent Messages)] Select message
  - Resend

Edit & Send

- [Message List (Unsent Messages)] Select message
  - Edit
  - Complete message

Using Sent Messages

- [Message List (Sent Messages)] Select message
  - Edit & Send
  - Complete message
Managing Messages

Opening Sender/Recipient Details
- [Message List] Select message
- View Mail Address
- Select sender or recipient

Renaming Folders
- Folder List/Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Rename
- Enter name

Deleting Folders
- Folder List/Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Delete
- Enter Handset Code

Empty folder before deleting it.

Adding Folders
- Folder List/Chat Folder List
- Create New Folder
- Enter name

Canceling Secret
- Unlock Secret folders temporarily
- (select Secret folder)
- Unlock Secret
- Enter Handset Code

Re-sorting Messages
- Folder List/Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Re-sort

Moving Messages Manually
- Message List
- Select message
- Manage Msg.
- Move to Folder
- Select folder

Chat Folders
- Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Delete Folder
- Enter Handset Code
- Yes

Deleting Folders
- Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Delete Folder
- Enter Handset Code
- Yes

Deleting All Messages
- Chat Folder List
- Select folder
- Delete All
- Enter Handset Code
- Yes

Resetting Chat Folders
- Chat Folder List
- Reset
- Enter Handset Code
- Yes
Internet Services ................................ 5-2
Service Basics .................................. 5-2
Yahoo! Keitai ................................. 5-3
Using Yahoo! Keitai ......................... 5-3
PC Site Browser .............................. 5-4
Using PC Site Browser ....................... 5-4
Browsing ....................................... 5-5
Basic Operations .............................. 5-5

Bookmarks & Saved Pages ................ 5-7
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages .... 5-7
S! Quick News ............................... 5-8
Receiving Content Updates ............. 5-8
S! Town & S! Loop ......................... 5-9
Fun Services ................................. 5-9
Additional Functions ...................... 5-10
Internet Services

Service Basics
Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser. Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.

Transmission/Information Fees
- Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security
- Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Secure Pages
- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page.
- Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage.
- SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced
- Clearing cookies
- Clearing authentication information (P.13-10)
Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Main Menu
Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 Connection starts

2 Highlight menu item

3 Page closes

Entering URLs Directly

Using History

Returning to Previous Pages
[Internet Page] Previous page opens
Follow these steps to return to the initial page.
[Internet Page] Forward
Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
[Internet Page] Yahoo! Keitai
User Authentication
Enter user ID or password
Streaming
Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.
Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Using History

Advanced

Switching Browsers
Deleting History
Using Previously Entered URLs (P.5-10)

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)
Restoring default browser settings (P.13-10)
Using PC Site Browser

Open PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

1. **Yahoo! Keitai**: Opens PC Site Browser.

2. **Homepage**: Connection starts
   - Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
   - When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
   - To disconnect, press "A".

3. **Highlight menu item**: Corresponding page opens.
   - Repeat "O" to open additional links.

4. **Yes**: Page closes

Returning to Previous Pages
[Internet Page] "O" Previous page opens
- Follow these steps to return to the initial page.
[Internet Page] "O" Forward "O"

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home
[Internet Page] "O" Home page

User Authentication
Enter user ID or password "O" "O"

Using History
In "O" History "O" "O" "O"
Select item "O"
Enter URL "O"

Entering URLs Directly
In "O" Enter URL "O" Enter URL "O"

Advanced

| Switching Browsers | Deleting History | Using Previously Entered URLs | Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) | Restoring default browser settings | Hiding PC Site Browser activation/change confirmation |
Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, scroll bar appears beside/below window. Use ◀ to scroll pages. Long Press ◀ to scroll continuously. On PC sites, use Page Navigation to confirm current page position.

Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press ◀ to select other frames.

Viewing Single Frame

Select a frame ◀ ◀ Frame In

To return, press ◀ ◀.

Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

1 On a page, ◀ (select menu item) ◀ ◀ ◀ Open in New Tab ◀ ◀

Opening a Third Page

After ◀ (select menu item) ◀ ◀ Tab Menu ◀ ◀ ◀ Open in New Tab ◀ ◀

Closing Tabs

▶(Long) ◀ Select tab ◀ ◀ Tab Menu ◀ ◀ ◀ Close Tab or Close All Other Tabs ◀ ◀

Opening a Third Page

After ◀ (select menu item) ◀ ◀ Tab Menu ◀ ◀ ◀ Open in New Tab ◀ ◀

Closing Tabs

▶(Long) ◀ Select tab ◀ ◀ Tab Menu ◀ ◀ ◀ Close Tab or Close All Other Tabs ◀ ◀

Advanced

- Switching View
- Zooming on Pages (Zoom Factor)
- Zooming Specific Areas
- Copying Text
- Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS
- Searching Current Page (P.5-10)
- Changing character size
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll
- Disabling automatic image download
- Disabling automatic sound playback (P.13-10)
Browsing

Text Entry
1. On a page, ☰ (select text entry field) ➔ ☰
2. Enter text ➔ ☰
   - Internet page returns.

Pull-down Menu Item Selection
1. On a page, ☰ (select menu list field) ➔ ☰
2. Select item ➔ ☰
   - When Multiple Selection is Supported ➔ 
     - Select text ➔ ☰

Page Item Indicators
1. On a page, ☰ (select box or button) ➔ ☰
   - Boxes ☰ or buttons ☰ appear.

Advanced
- Saving Files to Data Folder
- Using Linked Info
- Jumping to Page Top/Bottom
- Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation (Cursor Settings)
- Opening Function Shortcuts
- Playing Media Streams (P.5-11)

- Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)
- Using Memory Card as primary download storage (P.13-10)
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

**Bookmarks**
Bookmark sites for quick access.

1. **Saving Bookmarks**
   - On a page, Bookmark ➔ Save
     - Save appears only for savable pages.
   - Enter/edit title ➔

2. **Opening Bookmarks**
   - ♦ Yahoo! Keitai ➔
   - ♦ Bookmarks ➔

---

**Saved Pages**
Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

1. **Saving Pages**
   - On a page, Saved Pages ➔ Save
     - Save appears only for savable pages.
   - Enter/edit title ➔

---

**Opening Saved Pages**
Corresponding page opens.

1. ♦ Yahoo! Keitai ➔
2. ♦ Saved Pages ➔

---

**Advanced**
- Deleting Titles/Pages ➔ Editing Titles (P.5-11)
Receiving Content Updates

View content updates or breaking news. Transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items

1. \[S! Quick News Menu\]
   \[S! Quick News List\]

2. \[S! Quick News List\]
   \[Content List\]

3. \[Content List\]
   \[Yes\]
   \[Select item\]

   • Handset connects to the Internet.

4. \[Select item\]

   • Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1. In \[S! Quick News list\], \[Select item\]

2. \[Select title\]

   • Press \(\text{Yes}\) to open older title, or press \(\text{to open newer one.}\

Updating Items Manually

[\[S! Quick News List\] \[Select item\] \[\(\text{Yes}\)\] \[\(\text{Reload}\)\] \[\(\text{This Monitor or Reload All}\)\]

Indicators

- Unread News Flash
- Read News Flash
- News Flash auto update disabled
- Unread General news
- Read General news
- General news auto update disabled

Advanced

- Receiving S! Loop Item Updates
- Updating List Automatically
- Deleting S! Quick News Items
- Deleting S! Loop Items (P.5-12)
Fun Services

S! Town (Japanese)
Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can play games and meet other users.
- To use S! Town, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. Communication

2. S! Town
- S! Town (S! Application) starts.
- Refer to the S! Town help menu for operational instructions.
- When an upgrade notice appears, follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library
- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps.

S! Loop (Japanese)
S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc. Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. Communication

2. S! Loop
- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.
## Additional Functions

### Connecting/Browsing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Switching Browsers</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- [This Page or Linked Page] 🔄 Yes or No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Press 🔄 does not open previous page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deleting History</strong></td>
<td>- One Entry 🔄 Select item 🔄 Delete 🔄 Yes 🔄 Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- All Entries 🔄 Delete All 🔄 Enter Handset Code 🔄 Yes 🔄 Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using Previously Entered URLs</strong></td>
<td>- [Enter URL Window] 🔄 Select URL Log 🔄 Yes 🔄 Select URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PC Site Browser

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Switching View</strong></td>
<td>- In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zooming on Pages (Zoom Factor)</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Select scale 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jumping to Specific Locations</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Select location 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zooming Specific Areas</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Point to area 🔄 (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Pointed area is enlarged and shown in the lower half of Display. Long Press 🔄 to toggle Zoom Area options (Small, Large and Off).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Handling Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Copying Text</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Copy Text 🔄 Select first character 🔄 Select end point 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Complete message 🔄 S! Mail or SMS 🔄 Complete message 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Convenient Functions</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Send URL 🔄 Complete message 🔄 P! Mail or SMS 🔄 Complete message 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Searching Current Page</strong></td>
<td>- [Internet Page] 🔄 Enter search text 🔄 Enter search text 🔄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Press 🔄 to jump to next search result, if any.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Additional Functions**

**Saving Files to Data Folder**

- **Files on Page**
  - [Internet Page]  Select file  Save

- **Background Images**
  - [Internet Page]  Save
  - Background Image  Save

**Using Linked Info**

- **Dialing Numbers**
  - [Internet Page]  Highlight number

- **Sending Messages**
  - [Internet Page]  Highlight number or mail address

- **Accessing Internet Sites**
  - [Internet Page]  Highlight URL

**Page Operations**

- **Jumping to Page Top/Bottom**
  - [Internet Page]

- **Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation (Cursor Settings)**
  - [Internet Page]  (Long)

- **Opening Function Shortcuts**

**Streaming**

- **Playing Media Streams**

**Books & Saved Pages**

- **Deleting Titles/Pages**
  - **One Title/Page**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Select item

  - **All Titles/Pages**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Delete All

- **Editing Titles**

  - **Bookmarks**
    - [Bookmarks List]  Select title

  - **Saved Pages**
    - [Saved Pages List]  Select page

- **Bookmarks & Saved Pages**

  - **One Title/Page**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Select item

  - **All Titles/Pages**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Delete All

**Page Operations**

- **Jumping to Page Top/Bottom**
  - [Internet Page]

- **Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation (Cursor Settings)**
  - [Internet Page]  (Long)

- **Opening Function Shortcuts**

**Streaming**

- **Playing Media Streams**

**Books & Saved Pages**

- **Deleting Titles/Pages**
  - **One Title/Page**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Select item

  - **All Titles/Pages**
    - [Bookmarks/Saved Pages List]  Delete All

- **Editing Titles**

  - **Bookmarks**
    - [Bookmarks List]  Select title

  - **Saved Pages**
    - [Saved Pages List]  Select page
### Additional Functions

#### S! Quick News

- **Receiving S! Loop Item Updates**
  - **Registering with S! Loop Items**
    - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Loop List → Yes
  - Handset connects to the Internet. Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

- **Opening Information**
  - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Loop List → Select item → Select title →
  - Indicators:
    - Unread S! Loop
    - Read S! Loop
    - S! Loop auto update disabled

- **Updating List Automatically**
  - **S! Quick News List**
    - [S! Quick News Menu] Settings
      - S! Quick News → On
      - News Flash or General → Select interval or On
    - When General is set to On, items are updated once a day.
    - Updating items may incur high charges.
    - Automatic Update is only available in Japan.

- **Deleting S! Quick News Items**
  - **One Entry**
    - [S! Quick News List] Select item → Delete
    - [S! Loop List] Select item → Delete
    - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Loop List → Delete
    - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Quick News List → Delete

- **Deleting S! Loop Items**
  - **One Entry**
    - [S! Quick News List] Select item → Delete
    - [S! Loop List] Select item → Delete
    - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Loop List → Delete
    - [S! Quick News Menu] S! Quick News List → Delete

- **All Entries**
  - [S! Quick News List] Select item → Delete All
  - [S! Loop List] Select item → Delete All
  - Enter Handset Code → Yes
Digital TV ........................................6-2
Basics........................................... 6-2
Area Setup................................. 6-3
Watching TV............................... 6-4

TV Player ........................................ 6-6
Recording/Playing Programs............6-6

TV Timer ........................................ 6-8
TV Timer & TV Timer Recording ......6-8

Additional Functions..................... 6-9
Basics

920SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Watch Live Television</th>
<th>View Data Broadcasts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Rotate Display to Cycloid position to watch TV in landscape.</td>
<td>In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multi Job</th>
<th>Record &amp; Play Back Shows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book/Call Log.</td>
<td>Record current program on Memory Card for later viewing on handset; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access TV Listing (EPG)</th>
<th>Reserve TV Programs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access TV Listing (EPG) to find program channels and times; set Reservations by date and time to record shows or activate TV.</td>
<td>Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates &amp; times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Precautions

- 920SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable
Area Setup

Follow these steps when activating TV for the first time.

1. Setup confirmation appears.

2. Yes

3. Select region

4. Select prefecture

5. After setup, channel list appears.

Digital TV Antenna

- Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks; fold/rotate Antenna for best reception. (Unless transmission source is near, extend it for better reception.)
- After use, gently retract Antenna. Do not carry handset with Antenna pulled out; damage may result.
- Use optional TV Antenna Connection Cable as needed.

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In Other Region

Advanced

- Adding Reception Areas
- Switching Reception Areas
- Renaming Areas
- Updating all channels in the Area
- Assigning key function to
- Reassigning channels to other keys
- Deleting channels
Follow these steps after completing Area setup.

1. Use Keypad to select a channel
   - Use to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.
   - Rotate Display to Cycloid position to watch TV in landscape. (Data Broadcast will be hidden.)

2. Use Keypad to select a channel
   - Data Broadcast information is viewable only in portrait position.

3. "S" Yes "S" TV ends

Incoming Calls
- Press to answer calls.
- When interrupted by Voice Calls, current program is recorded temporarily for delayed playback. (Time Shift)

Incoming Messages
- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press to open messages.

Panel Description
Indicator positions may vary by display size.

Key Assignments
- Open Options menu
- Toggle Panel On/Off
- (Long) Record
- Activate TV/Change Area
- Volume up or cancel mute
- Volume down (Long Press: mute)
- Toggle Display
- Exit TV

Program Name
Channel Key
Channel
Signal Strength*
Area Name
Volume
Station Name

*The more bars the better.
Digital TV

Data Broadcast (Japanese)
Data Broadcast text appears below TV image; use  […] to select an item and press […] to access program-related information and interactive services.

Data Broadcast information is viewable only in portrait position.

Data Broadcast Fees
- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

TV Listing (Japanese)

In TV window, (Long)
- EPG application starts; refer to the application’s help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Program Information

In TV window, Program Info.

Select program
- To return, press […] twice.

In Cycloid Position
- Press […] to open program information while watching TV.

Multi Job
Watch TV in one half of Display and use other functions in the other.

Advanced
    Changing Display View  Returning to Initial Window  (P.6-9)  Selecting subtitle display option  (P.13-11)
Recording/Playing Programs

Record clips on Memory Card while watching TV.

Precautions
- Saved files cannot be copied/forwarded or attached to S! Mail.
- 920SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

In TV window, (Long) Recording starts

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.

Recording ends

In Cycloid Position
- Alternatively, Long Press % to start/stop recording.

Recording Programs

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted
- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

When Small Light Illuminates Yellow
- Signal is not received. Move to a place where Small Light illuminates green (moderate reception) or blue (strong reception).

Advanced
- Recording content without text data (P.13-11)
### Playing Recorded Programs

1. **TV Player**

#### Playback Operations

- **Enlarge image portion in the same way as while watching TV.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fast Forward</td>
<td>Fast Forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast Rewind</td>
<td>Fast Rewind (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip Forward</td>
<td>Skip Forward (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip Backward</td>
<td>Skip Backward (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Pause (Long) in Cycloid position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split</td>
<td>Split (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Marker</td>
<td>Create Marker (Long)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle Panel</td>
<td>Toggle Panel (Long) in Cycloid position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Control</td>
<td>Volume Control (Long) in Cycloid position</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Select file**

- Playback Window
  - Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

2. **(Long) ➤ Playback stops**

#### Time Shift Playback

- When current program has been recorded temporarily for incoming calls, etc., **M** appears.

Follow these steps to start playback.

1. **(Long) ➤ Playback starts**
   - Playback stops when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.

2. **(Long) ➤ Recording/playback stops**
   - Recorded content is deleted.

#### Skipping Forward during Playback

- Press **#**
  - Backward skip is not supported.

#### Recording Programs Temporarily

- **[TV Window]** **(Long)**

### Advanced

- Checking Memory Card Memory Status
- Playing Files Repeatedly
- Playing Files with Markers
- Playing Split Files
- Renaming Files
- Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (P.13-12)
- Deleting Files (P.6-9 · 6-10)
**TV Timer & TV Timer Recording**

1. **Reservation List**
   - Reservation List

2. **New Entry**
   - From TV Listing

3. **Manual Programming or Recording**
   - Manual

4. **Enter start date/time**
   - Enter end date/time

5. **Channel**
   - Select channel

When TV is Activated for Timer Recording
- Audio output is redirected to Speaker/Headphones even if Sound Output is set to Bluetooth Device. (TV audio is muted.)

**Setting Timer via EPG**
- After pressing the From TV Listing button, refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

**Timer Recording Precautions**
- End the current operations.
- Make sure TV reception is good.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free space on Memory Card.
- Memory Card must be inserted to start recording.

**At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)**
- TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.
- Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

**While Using Another Function**
- Finish application. Appears if Timer recording cannot start in current state; press then end application to enable Timer.

**Advanced**
- Setting Timer via Program Information
- Opening/Editing Timer Details
- Opening/Deleting Timer Log
- Changing TV Alarm Time (P.13-12)

---

6-8
Additional Functions

Area & Channel

- Adding Reception Areas

  - [TV Window] Set Channels
  - Change Area
  - Select Area
  - Set Area Info
  - Select region
  - Select prefecture
  - Select locality

- Switching Reception Areas

  - [TV Window] Select Area

TV Window Operations

- Viewing Key Assignments

  - [TV Window] Help

- Saving Current Channel

  - [TV Window] Set Channels
  - Save Channel
  - Select key

- To overwrite a saved channel, choose Yes and press .

Enlarging Specific Image Portion

- Long Press a key in Cycloid position.
  - Key Assignments:
    - 1 Upper left
    - 2 Upper center
    - 3 Upper right
    - 4 Left
    - 5 Center
    - 6 Right
    - 7 Lower left
    - 8 Lower center
    - 9 Lower right

Changing Audiovisual Setting

- TV reception time may be relatively shorter when High Resolution is selected.

Using Wireless Headphones

- Pair with Bluetooth® wireless Headphones compliant with SCMS-T copyright protection standard beforehand.

Data Broadcast

- [TV Window] Change View (Data)

Changing Display View

- Returning to Initial Window

Recording/Playback

- Checking Memory Card Memory Status

- Playing Files Repeatedly

- [Video List] Memory Remaining

- [Video List] Playback Pattern
  - Repeat
Additional Functions

- Playing Files with Markers
  - [Playback Window] △ (Long) or ○ (Long)
  - Moving to Specific Markers
    - [Playback Window] △-△ or △-○

- Playing Split Files
  - [Video List] △ Select split file
  - △ Select file

- Recorded Programs
  - Renaming Files
    - [Video List] △ Select file
      ○ Rename
      ○ Enter name

- Deleting Files
  - Single Files
    - [Video List] △ Select file
      ○ Delete
      ○ Yes
  - All Files
    - [Video List] △ Select file
      ○ Delete All
      ○ Enter Handset Code
      ○ Yes

- TV Timer/TV Recording Timer
  - Setting Timer via Program Information
    - [Program Info. Window] △ Select program
      ○ Programming
  - Recording Programs
    - [Program Info. Window] △ Select program
      ○ ○

Timer entries set via program information are updated automatically with program changes. Poor signal conditions may inhibit such updates. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries.

- Opening Reservation List
  - [Program Info. Window]
    ○ Reservation List

Opening/Editing Timer Details

- Opening Entries
  - [Reservation List] △ Select entry
- Editing Entries
  - [Reservation List] △ Select entry
    ○ Edit
    ○ Edit
  - Deleting Entries
    - [Reservation List] △ Select entry
      ○ Delete
      ○ Yes

Opening/Deleting Timer Log

- Opening Timer Log
  - [Reservation List] △ Select record
- Playing Recorded Programs
  - [Reservation List] △ Select record
- Deleting Records
  - [Reservation List] △ Select record
    ○ Yes
Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Various Image Sizes</th>
<th>Shooting Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.</td>
<td>Add frame or special effect, capture sequential/panoramic images or save scanned images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auto Focus</th>
<th>Editing/Printing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.</td>
<td>Edit captured images or print on a compatible printer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.

*Images/video may not be delivered as sent depending on the size or recipient devices.
The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

### Photo Viewfinder

1. Capacity
2. Picture Quality
3. Picture Size
4. Continuous Shoot
5. Scene
6. Mobile Light
7. Focus
8. Exposure
9. Save to
10. White Balance
11. Self-timer

### Video Viewfinder

1. Video Quality
2. Record Size
3. Exposure
4. Record Time
5. Save to
6. Mobile Light
7. Self-timer
### Capturing Still Images

1. **Camera**
   - Photo Viewfinder
   - Pre-Image Capture Operations:
     - Zoom in/out: 
       - 
     - Toggle mode
     - Brightness (darker/brighter)
     - Change image size
     - Toggle Mobile Light mode
     - Open Help
   - Image Save Window
   - Shutter clicks and the captured image appears. (To start over, press .)

2. **Frame image on Display**
   - Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
   - Open saved images from Data Folder.

3. **Camera shuts down**

### Sending Captured Images via S! Mail
- After , Complete message
  - May not be delivered as sent properly depending on the size or recipient devices.

### Opening Saved Images
- After , Data Folder
  - Select folder
  - Select file

### Advanced
- Activating Mobile Light
- Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots
- Adjusting Focus Manually
- Locking Focus
- Adjusting Image Brightness
- Sending Images Wirelessly
- Changing Image Size
- Changing Mode According to Lighting or Subject (P.7-12)
- Changing save location
- Activating automatic saving
- Selecting image quality
- Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions
- Changing shutter click sound
- Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches (P.13-13)
Recording Video

1. Camera

- Video Viewfinder
  - For pre-recording operations, see the table under "Pre-Image Capture Operations" on P.7-4.

2. Frame image on Display

- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press \[\text{REC}\].)

3. Video Save Menu

- Recording stops with a tone. (To start over, press \[\text{REC}\].)

4. Save

- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
- Play saved video from Data Folder or Media Player.

5. Camera shuts down

- Camera shuts down

Advanced

- Activating Mobile Light
- Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots
- Adjusting Focus Manually
- Locking Focus
- Locking Image Brightness
- Sending Images Wirelessly
- Changing Recording Time/Format (P.7-12)

Playing Unsaved Video

- In \[\text{Preview}\]

Playing Saved Video

- After \[\text{Preview}\] \& \[\text{Data Folder}\]
- \[\text{Select file}\]
- \[\text{Send and Send}\] \& \[\text{Save}\]
- \[\text{Complete message}\]

Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail

- \[\text{Send and Send}\] \& \[\text{Save}\]
- \[\text{Complete message}\]

- May not be delivered as sent properly depending on the size or recipient devices.

Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before recorded video is saved, captured clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Captured clip is saved.)
Using Shooting Modes

May not be available depending on selected image/video size.

**Self-timer**

1. In Photo/Video Viewfinder, **Self-timer**

2. Select time

3. Frame image on Display
   - After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
   - To stop recording, press .

**Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)**

4. **Continuous Shoot**

5. **All Pictures**
   - All captured images are saved.

**Saving the Selected Image**

After , (select image) , , Selected Picture

**Adding Frames (Photo Camera)**

1. In mode menu, **Add Frame**

2. **Preset Frames**
   - Select frame

3. Frame image on Display
   - Captured image appears.

**Using Frames in Data Folder**

In , Data Folder , Select frame

4. Frame image on Display
   - After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
   - When shooting speed is set to Manual (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat for each frame.

**Releasing Shutter during Countdown**

- After , , (select image)

**Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown**

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)
Camera & Imaging

**Shooting Modes**

1. **Camera Effects (Photo Camera)**
   - In mode menu, select **Camera Effects**.
   - **Select effect**
   - Frame image on Display
     - Captured image appears.

2. **Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)**
   - In mode menu, select **Panorama/Scanner**.
   - Frame image on Display
     - Captured image appears.

3. **Frame image on Display**
   - Move handset slowly to keep aligned with either of yellow lines.
   - Image is captured automatically when the bar turns blue.

4. **Save Menu**
   - Captured image appears.
   - **Save**
   - Image is saved.

5. **Checking Unsaved Images**
   - To change preview method, follow these steps.
   - **Select method**
   - Sending Captured Images via S! Mail
     - In **Save and Send**
     - Complete message

6. **Sending Images Wirelessly** (P.12)

7. **Scanning Images (Photo Camera)**
   - In Panorama/Scanner menu, select **Scanner**.
   - **Select size**
   - Frame image on Display
     - Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

8. **Save Menu**
   - Captured image appears.
   - **Save**
   - Image is saved.

9. **Checking Unsaved Images**
   - In **Preview**
   - Sending Captured Images via S! Mail
     - In **Save and Send**
     - Complete message
Editing Images

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on the type and size.

- **Picture Editor**
  - **Resize**: Select from preset sizes or crop image for size
  - **Retouch**: Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
  - **Paste**: Add text/dates to images
  - **Stamp**: Add stamps to images
  - **Face Arrange**: Make smily, angry or sad faces
  - **Frame**: Add Frame to images
  - **Correction**: Correct images
  - **Rotate**: Rotate images
  - **File Format**: Convert file format and change file size

- **Composite**
  - **Merge Panorama**: Combine two still images into one
  - **Split Picture**: Combine up to four images into one

---

Getting Started

Basic Operations

1. **Data Folder**
   - **Edit**

2. **Pictures**
   - **Select image**
   - **Edit**

3. **Picture Editor or Composite**

4. Picture Editor Menu

5. **Select effect**
   - **Edit**
   - To start over, press 

6. When finished,
   - **Save As New**
   - To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit 

7. **Save here**

Canceling Effects

After , **Undo**
- To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .
## Editing Procedures

### Changing Image Size

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   - Click **Resize**

2. **Select size**

3. **Specify display area**

   - Display Area Window
     - To zoom in/out, press + then use ±.
     - Omit ± if there is no rectangle on the image.

4. **Editing is completed.**

### Cropping Images

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   - Click **Resize**

2. **Cut**

3. **Move +**
   - To the upper left corner of the portion to crop

4. **Move +**
   - To the lower right corner of the portion to crop

5. **Specify display area**

6. **Editing is completed.**

### Face Arrange

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   - Click **Face Arrange**

2. **Select type**

3. **Editing is completed.**

---

### Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

---

**Advanced**

- Applying Visual Effects
- Adding Text
- Adding Frames
- Adding Stamps (P.7-13)
Editing Images

Adjusting Positions
Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1. In Face Arrange menu, +
   - A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

2. Move + to top left of face

3. Go

4. Move + to bottom right of face
   - Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

5. Yes
   - Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

6. Save here

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:
- Near View: Best suited for close-up shots
- Document: Use for images with text
- Standard: Apply to other images

1. In Composite menu, Merge Panorama

2. <Empty>
   - Select image

3. EFFECT
   - Select effect
   - Editing is completed.

Advanced

- Correcting Image Parameters
- Rotating Images
- Converting File Format
- Combining Reduced Images (P.7-13)
Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)
Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services. DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

1 Settings ➔ Connectivity
2 Memory Card ➔ DPOF

3 Number of Copies ➔

4 For Each Picture ➔ Select folder ➔
5 Select image ➔

6 Enter a number of copies to print ➔
   ➔ For more settings, repeat ➔ ➔.

7 Applying a Number to All Images
   In ➔ ➔ For All Pictures ➔ ➔ Enter a number of copies to print ➔
   Canceling Specified Number
   In ➔, enter 00 ➔ ➔ ➔
   Viewing Current Print Settings
   In ➔, Check Settings ➔

Using Printers
Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.
   • Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
   • Some images may not be sent depending on the type and size.

1 Data Folder ➔ Pictures ➔
2 Select image ➔ Print ➔
3 Via Bluetooth ➔ Select printer ➔
4 Yes ➔
   ➔ To cancel, press ➔.

When Authorisation Code is Required
Enter Authorisation Code ➔

Advanced
Adding Dates to Prints ➔ Creating a Print with Thumbnails (P.7-13)
Additional Functions

Camera

Photo Camera & Video Camera

Activating Mobile Light

[Viewfinder] ♦ Mobile Light
★ On, Automatic or Low Light ♦
- Low Light is available for still image capture.
- Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.

Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots

[Viewfinder] ♦ Shooting Settings ★ Focus Setting ● Macro ♦

Adjusting Focus Manually

[Viewfinder] ♦ Shooting Settings ★ Focus Setting ● Manual Focus ♦
★ Adjust focus ♦
- To readjust focus, press ♦.

Locking Focus

[Viewfinder] ♦
★ To start over, press ♦ again.

Adjusting Image Brightness

[Viewfinder] ♦ Shooting Settings ★ Exposure ♦
★ Adjust level ♦

Sending Images Wirelessly

Still Images

[Image Save Window] ♦ Send via Bluetooth, Send via IrDA or Send via IrSS ♦

Panorama/Scanned Images

[Save Menu] ♦ Send via Bluetooth or Infrared ♦

Video

[Video Save Menu] ♦ Send ♦
★ Bluetooth or Infrared ♦

Changing Image Size

[Photo Viewfinder] ♦ Select size ♦

Changing Mode According to Lighting or Subject

[Photo Viewfinder] ♦ Select mode ♦

Video Camera

Changing Recording Time/Format

[Video Viewfinder] ♦ For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO ♦
★ Select size ♦
- For SD VIDEO, choose Yes and press ♦.
Image Editing & Printing

**Editing Images**

- **Applying Visual Effects**
  - [Picture Editor Menu] Retouch
    - [Select effect]

- **Adding Text**
  - [Picture Editor Menu] Paste
    - [Add text]
    - [Move text]

- **Dates**
  - [Picture Editor Menu] Paste
    - Select date
    - [Move date]

- **Outline**
  - [Select text color]
  - [Select outline color]

- **Adding Frames**
  - [Select frame]

**Additional Functions**

- **Image Editing & Printing**
  - [Picture Editor Menu] P.7-8
  - [Composite Menu] P.7-8
  - [Photo Print Menu] P.7-11

- **Applying Visual Effects**
  - [Select effect]

- **Adding Text**
  - [Add text]

- **Dates**
  - [Select date]

- **Outline**
  - [Select text color]
  - [Select outline color]

- **Adding Frames**
  - [Select frame]

**Combining Reduced Images**

- [Composite Menu] Split Picture
  - 480x854 or Split Picture
  - [Select <Empty>]

- Repeat from selecting <Empty> as needed.

**DPOF**

- [Photo Print Menu] Settings
  - [Add Date]
  - [Index Print] On

- [Photo Print Menu] Settings
  - [Select format]
  - [Select format/size]

- Changing file format/size may affect file size/image quality.
Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 920SH.
Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Features & File Support:

- **Music**
  - **My Music**
    - Handset/Memory Card: Downloads/Transferred Files
  - **SD AUDIO**
    - Memory Card: Transferred SD-Audio Files
  - **WMA**
    - Memory Card: Transferred WMA Files

- **Videos**
  - **My Videos**
    - Handset
    - Memory Card: Downloads/Recorded Files
  - **SD VIDEO**
    - Memory Card: SD-Video Files

**Playback Precautions**
- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Media Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.

**Compatibility**
- SD AUDIO and WMA files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.
Media Player & SI Applications

Media Player

Download music from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

1. **Media Player Menu**

2. **Music**

3. **Download Music**

   - Download via Music Search (Japanese)
   - Follow onscreen instructions.

   - Follow the links to download media.

**Obtaining Music**

**Saving Music Files from PCs**
- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

**Handling Transferred Music**
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained music.

**Saving WMA Files**
Follow these steps to save WMA files via SI Music Connect (Japanese).
Copyright protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.

**Saving AAC Files**
Convert PC music files to 920SH-compatible format (P.14-20), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.14-22) via Mass Storage.
Install Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese) beforehand.

**Obtaining Video**

1. **In Media Player menu, Videos**

2. **Download Videos**

   - Follow the links to download media.

3. **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**
   - Copy music from PC. Refer to the SI Music Connect help menu for operational instructions.

**SI Music Connect**
- For details, see Utility Software Starter Guide (Japanese).

**Connection ends**
- Disconnect USB Cable.

4. **Yes**

**Handling Transferred Video**
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained music.

**Notes**
- Copyright protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained music.
Playing Music

1. Media Player ➔ Music ➔
   - Music Menu

2. My Music ➔
   - Select folder
   - Music Playlists Window

3. All Music ➔
   - Music File List

4. Select file ➔
   - Music Playback Window
     - Jacket image appears for compatible files.
     - Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files
       - In ➔, SD AUDIO or WMA ➔
       - From ➔
     - Searching Music Files
       - After ➔ ➔ Search ➔ ➔ Enter search text ➔
     - Lyric Display- Compatible Files
       - Press ➔ to display lyrics.

Music Playback Window Indicators

Music Playback Window Operations

- Replay (Long Press: fast rewind*)
- Skip forward (Long Press: fast forward*)
- Pause
- Volume down (Long Press: mute)
- Volume up or cancel mute
- Switch Sound Output
- Open Help

*Release for playback.

Advanced

- Deleting Music Files (P.8-5)
- Resuming from Stopped Point
- Playing Repeatedly or Randomly
- Changing Sound Effects
- Sorting Files (P.8-14)

- Deleting all WMA files
- Switching audio output to wireless device (P.13-13)
Deleting Music Files

- **Single SD AUDIO Files**
  - [Music File List] Select file
  - Delete Track
  - Yes

- **All SD AUDIO Files**
  - [Music Playlists Window] All Music
  - Delete All Tracks
  - Yes

- **Other Music Files (Single)**
  - Data Folder
  - Music or Ring Songs
  - Select file
  - Delete
  - Yes

- **Other Music Files (All)**
  - Data Folder
  - Manage Items
  - Delete All
  - Enter Handset
  - Code
  - Yes

*Source files will be deleted in all cases.*
Playing Video

1 Media Player
- Videos

2 My Videos
- Phone Memory or Memory Card

3 All Videos

4 Select file

Video Playback Window

Playing SD VIDEO Files
- SD VIDEO
- Searching Video Files
- Enter search text

At Alarm Time
- Playback stops
- Video Recorded on Other Devices
- Video image may appear rotated

Video Playback Window Indicators

- Title
- Elapsed time
- Author name
- Volume
- Clip number
- Information link
- Status
- Sound Effects
- Playback Pattern

Video Playback Operations

- Replay (Long Press: fast rewind*)
- Skip forward (Long Press while paused: advance frames, Long Press: fast forward*)
- Pause
- Volume down (Long Press: mute)
- Volume up or cancel mute
- Switch Sound Output
- Toggle Display Size
- Open Help

*Release for playback

Advanced
- Deleting Video Files (P.8-7)
- Resuming from Stopped Point
- Playing Repeatedly or Randomly
- Changing Sound Effects
- Changing Playback Size
- Sorting Files (P.8-14)
- Switching audio output to wireless device (P.13-13)
Deleting Video Files

- Single SD VIDEO Files
  - [Video File List]  Select file  Delete  Yes

- Other Video Files (Single)
  - Data Folder  Videos  Select file  Delete  Yes

- Other Video Files (All)
  - Data Folder  Videos  Manage Items  Delete All  Enter Handset Code  Yes

- Source files will be deleted in all cases.
Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to a Playlist:

1. Press Media Player ➔ Music ➔ Music

2. In My Music ➔ My Music

3. All Music ➔ All Music

4. Select file ➔ Add to Playlist

Renaming Playlists

In Playlists window, select Playlist ➔ Edit List Title ➔ Enter name

Advanced

- Adding New Playlists
- Changing File Order
- Deleting Playlist Files
- Deleting Playlists (P.8-15)
Crop

Some files may not be edited.

1. Media Player ➔ Videos ➔
2. My Videos ➔
3. Phone Memory or Memory Card ➔
4. Select Playlist or All Videos ➔

5. Edit ➔ Yes ➔

Crop ➔

6. Select Two Points ➔

Delete Before/After

7. Press at start point

8. Press at end point

In Edit menu, Crop ➔

Delete Before or Delete After ➔

Press at crop point

Video plays. Press to pause/start video.

The portion between two points is saved and playback starts.

Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until editing is complete.

Video plays.

The portion before or after the selected point is deleted and playback starts.
Adding Subtitles

Follow these steps to add left-to-right scrolling text.

1. **In Edit menu, Edit Subtitle**

2. **<Empty>** Enter text

3. Press at start point

4. **Advanced**

5. **Scrolling**

6. **Direction**

7. **Create New**

8. **Editing Text**

Advanced

- Changing Start/End Point
- Editing Text
- Deleting Subtitles

(P.8-11)
Editing Subtitles

Changing Start/End Point

[Edit Subtitle Menu] Duration
  % at start point % at end point

Editing Text

Before Saving Text

[Edit Subtitle Menu] Edit Text
  % Edit text

After Saving Text

[Subtitle List] Select entry
  % Edit Text % Edit text

Deleting Subtitles

[Subtitle List] Select entry
  % Delete % Yes
Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 920SH compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

Remote Control
• Use a compatible S! Application to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

Network S! Applications
• A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls
• Incoming transmissions automatically pause S! Application.

Advanced
• Downloading S! Applications
• Setting S! Application to Activate in Standby
• Deleting S! Applications

Exiting S! Applications

1 S! Appli
2 Select application

Pausing S! Applications
• Suspend
• Resume

Resuming S! Applications
• Select Cancel to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused.
• Select End to end the S! Application.

Advanced
• Adjusting S! Application sound volume
• Canceling surround effect
• Showing incoming transmission notice
• Pausing S! Application for incoming mail
• Setting handset to show notice at Alarm Time
• Showing incoming S! Appli Request notice
• Changing Screensaver Activation Time
• Restoring default S! Application settings
• Restoring default S! Appli Library
S! Applications

8-13

Downloading S! Applications

[S! Appli Library] Download
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting S! Application to Activate in Standby

Activating Screensaver
- Select application
- S! Appli
- Switch On/Off
- On

Setting Screensaver
- Select application
- As Screensaver

- Handset Code may be required.
- Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Deleting S! Applications

[S! Appli Library] Select application
- Delete
- Yes

- As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications.
- Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.
Additional Functions (Media)

Music/Video Playback
- Resuming from Stopped Point
  - [Music Menu] [Video Menu]: Last Played Music or Last Played Video
- Playing Repeatedly or Randomly
  - Play Randomly
    - [Music Playback Window]
      - Playback Pattern Random
  - Repeat Randomly
    - [Music Playback Window]
      - Playback Pattern Random Repeat
  - Repeat One File
    - [Music Playback Window]
      - Playback Pattern Repeat
  - Repeat All Files
    - [Music Playback Window]
      - Playback Pattern Repeat All
- Changing Sound Effects
  - [Music Playback Window]
    - Sound Effects
      - Select effect
  - Video Playback
    - Available for My Videos files only.
    - Playing Repeatedly or Randomly
      - Play Randomly
      - [Video Playback Window]
        - Playback Pattern Random
      - Repeat Randomly
        - [Video Playback Window]
          - Playback Pattern Repeat
      - Repeat One File
        - [Video Playback Window]
          - Playback Pattern Repeat
      - Repeat All Files
        - [Video Playback Window]
          - Playback Pattern Repeat All
- Changing Sound Effects
  - [Video Playback Window]
    - Sound Effects
      - Select effect
- Changing Playback Size
  - [Video Playback Window]
    - Display Size
      - Select size
- Managing Files
  - [File List]
    - Select option
- Sorting Files
  - [Video Playback Window]
    - Settings
      - Display Size
        - Select size
Additional Functions (Media)

---

**Playlists**

**Adding New Playlists**

- [Playlists Window] 
- Add New Playlist
- Enter name

**Changing File Order**

- [Playlists Window] 
- Select Playlist
- Select file
- Change Order
- Move file

**Deleting Playlist Files**

- [Playlists Window] 
- Select Playlist
- Select file
- Delete

**Deleting Playlists**

- [Playlists Window] 
- Select Playlist
- Delete Playlist
- Yes
Pen Light ....................................... 9-2
Calendar & Tasks .............................. 9-3
  Calendar ........................................ 9-3
  Tasks ............................................ 9-6
Notepad ........................................... 9-8
  Saving Text ................................... 9-8
Expenses Memo ................................. 9-9
  Adding Expenses ............................. 9-9
Voice Recorder ............................... 9-10
  Recording/Playing Voice ................. 9-10
Osaifu-Keitai®/S! FeliCa ................. 9-11
  Osaifu-Keitai®/S! FeliCa (Japanese) .... 9-11
  Locking IC Card ............................ 9-12
Calculator ..................................... 9-14
  Using Calculator ............................ 9-14
Alarms ............................................ 9-15
  Using Alarms ................................. 9-15
Wakeup TV ..................................... 9-17
  Using Wakeup TV ............................. 9-17
Hour Minder .................................... 9-19
  Using Hour Minder ........................... 9-19
World Clock ............................... 9-20
  Opening World Clock ..................... 9-20
Stopwatch ..................................... 9-21
  Using Stopwatch ............................ 9-21
Countdown Timer ............................ 9-22
  Using Countdown Timer ................. 9-22
S! Cast ......................................... 9-23
  S! Cast & Weather Indicator
  (Japanese) ..................................... 9-23
Document Viewer ......................... 9-24
  Opening PC Documents ................. 9-24
e-Books ....................................... 9-25
  Reading e-Books (Japanese) .......... 9-25
Scan Barcode ............................... 9-26
  Scanning Printed Barcodes ............. 9-26
Create QR Code ........................... 9-27
  Creating QR Codes ....................... 9-27
Scan Card ..................................... 9-28
  Scanning Business Cards ............... 9-28
Text Scanner ................................ 9-29
  Scanning Text ............................... 9-29
Additional Functions ..................... 9-30
Pen Light

Use handset as a flashlight. To use Mobile Light as a strobe for mobile camera, see P.7-12 "Activating Mobile Light."

1. In closed position, 
   • (Long) Mobile Light illuminates.

2. Mobile Light goes off

Important Pen Light Usage Note
• Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.
Calendar

Opening Calendar

1. In Calendar window, switch view.

2. Calendar window

Switching View

Example: 2Month View

Press to toggle view.

Key Assignments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Key Assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open previous page</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to (Enter Date)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find (By Category)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stamp¹</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Colour²</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select week²</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to (Today)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select date</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find (By Subject)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Available in Month/3Month View.
²In Week View, select time block.
Handy Extras

Calendar & Tasks

Saving Schedules
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details. Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

1. In Calendar window, (select date)

2. <Add New Entry>

3. Enter subject

4. Enter start date/time

5. End: Enter end date/time

6. Alarm:

7. Alarm Time: Select time

8. Description:

9. Saved

Advanced

Changing Alarm Tone/Video Changing Alarm Duration Hiding Entries Saving Repetitive Schedules Editing Schedules (P.9-30)
Handy Extras

Calendar & Tasks

At Alarm Time
Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press % or a Side Key.

Opening Schedule
While Alarm is activated, %
Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls
Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks
1. In Calendar window, % (select date) %
2. Select schedule or task %
3. List returns

Opening Task List
In %, (select task) %  %  % Go to Tasks %

Accessing Secret Entries
[Calendar Window] %  % Unlock Temporarily %  %  % Enter Handset Code %

Deleting Schedules
1. In schedule list, % (select schedule) %
2. Delete %
3. This Appointment %  % Yes %

Deleting All Schedules
1. In Calendar window, % (select date) %
2. Delete %  % % All This Day %  % Yes %

Advanced
% Deleting All Schedules (P.9-31)
Calendar & Tasks

Tasks

Saving Tasks
Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details. Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

1. Tools 2. Tasks 3. <Add New Entry>

4. Enter subject 5. Enter due date/time 6. Alarm:

7. Alarm Time: Select time

8. Description: Enter task details

9. Saved

Task with No Due Date/Time
In 7. Other From 8. Custom Alarm Time

Advanced
Changing Alarm Tone/Video  Changing Alarm Duration  Hiding Entries  Editing Tasks (P.9-30)
Calendar & Tasks

At Alarm Time
Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press or a Side Key.

Opening Task
When Another Function is Active
Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls
Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks
1. Tools 2. Tasks

Select task

Use to open completed or uncompleted task list.

This Task

Yes

Deleting One Entry
In task list, (select task)

Deleting All Completed Tasks
In task list, (select task)

Deleting Tasks

Accessing Secret Entries
After (select task)
Unlock Temporarily
Enter Handset Code

Marking Tasks as Completed
After (select task) (select task)

Deleted

Advanced
Deleting All Tasks (P.9-31)
Saving Text

New Notepad Entry
1  Tools => Tools 3
2  Notepad =>
3  <Add New Entry> =>

Opening Notepad
1  In Notepad list, (select entry) =>
2  List returns

Deleting Entries
1  In Notepad list, (select entry) =>

Advanced
- Editing Notepad
- Inserting Notepad Text (P.9-31)
Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses
1. Enter amount

2. Select Category
   - Saved

Saving under Custom Category
   - In, Other, Enter name

Advanced
   - Changing Category of Saved Entry
   - Changing Amount (P.9-31)

Checking Entries
1. Tools
   - Tools 1

2. Expenses Memo

3. Totals

Deleting Entries
1. In Expenses Memo list, (select entry)

2. Delete Item
   - Yes

3. Delete All

4. Enter Handset Code
   - Yes

5. Menu returns
Voice Recorder

Voice Recorder

Recording

- If battery runs low while recording, Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Record conversations during calls via Record Caller Voice (P.3-11).

1. Tools
2. Voice Recorder

Recording Window

3. Recording starts
4. Recording stops
5. Save

Advanced

- Saving Longer Recordings
- Sending Voice Files via S! Mail
- Switching Storage Media (P.9-31)

Playback

1. In recording window, Ring Songs-Tones

2. Select file

Play Before Saving
In  
Playback starts
Start Over
In  
Playback stops
From

Playing Memory Card Files
After  
Change to MemoryCard
Osafu-Keita®/S! FeliCa (Japanese)

Osafu-Keita® describes IC Card-equipped mobile handsets with e-money or credit functions/services. S! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 920SH supports Osafu-Keita®/S! FeliCa. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

Basics
Before using S! FeliCa, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Using S! FeliCa
Follow these steps to conduct a transaction. Example: Making an electronic payment
- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli. Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

Advanced
Enabling to View Lifestyle-Appli Balances
Moving Applications Up/Down Balance Info List
Removing Applications from Balance Info List
Checking Lifestyle-Appli Balance
Restoring default S! FeliCa settings

Important S! FeliCa Usage Note
SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.
This page discusses the locking of IC cards and remote locking features.

### Locking IC Card

**IC Card Lock**
Use this function to restrict access to or prevent unauthorized use of S! FeliCa on the handset.

1. **Tools**
   - Tools 1
   - Osaifu-Keitai

2. **IC Card Settings**
   - IC Card Settings Menu

3. **IC Card Lock**
   - On

4. **Enter Handset Code**
   - Yes

- **Canceling IC Card Lock**
  - Off
  - Enter Handset Code

### Remote Lock
Disable S! FeliCa remotely by mail or phone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mail Remote Lock</th>
<th>Send mail to activate Remote Lock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call Remote Lock</td>
<td>Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Remote Lock PW**
- **Enter password**
- **Switch On/Off**
- **On**

#### Mail Remote Lock
- **Preparation on Handset**

1. In IC Card Settings menu, select **Remote Lock**
2. Enter Handset Code

- **Remote Lock PW**
- **Mail Remote Lock**
- **Mail Remote Lock Menu**

#### Advanced
- **Changing IC Card Lock Notice Recipient** (P.9-32)
Call Remote Lock

1 In IC Card Settings menu, Enter Handset Code

2 Call Remote Lock

3 Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2

4 Phone Book

5 Switch On/Off

6 On

---

Advanced

Changing Required Missed Call Count for Call Remote Lock (P.9-32)

---

Activating Remote Lock via Phone

If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

2 Handset receives call

End the call

The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

3 Within three minutes, repeat 1-2 twice

After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.
Using Calculator

1. Tools
2. Tools
3. Calculator

Calculator Window

1. Use Keypad to enter digits
2. Calculate
3. Calculator ends

Calculation Keys
- (Add)
- (Subtract)
x (Multiply)
÷ (Divide)
= (Equal)
C-CE (Clear)
CM (Clear Memory)
RM (Recall Memory)
M+ (Add Memory)
(Decimal)
+/− (Switch)
% (Percent)

Memory Calculation
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls
- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return.

Advanced
- Copying Calculation Results
- Changing Exchange Rate for Currency Conversion
- Converting Currencies (P.9-32)
Using Alarms

Setting Alarm
Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week.
Set Snooze (Alarm repeats at set interval), Alarm Volume and Duration.

1. **Tools**
   - **Tools 1**
   - **Alarms**

2. **Alarm List**
   - **Enter hour**
   - (24-hour format)
   - **Enter minutes**

3. **Repeat: [ ]**
   - **[ ]**

4. **Selected Days: [ ]**
   - **[ ]**
   - For **Once or Every Day (All)**, skip ahead to 5.

5. **Select day: [ ]**
   - **[ ]**
   - **Complete selection: [ ]**

6. **Snooze:**
   - **[ ]**

7. **Select interval:**
   - **[ ]**
   - For custom intervals, select **Other**.

8. **Alarm Volume:**
   - **[ ]**

9. **Adjust level:**
   - **[ ]**

10. **Duration:**
    - **[ ]**

11. **Select time:**
    - **[ ]**
    - For custom Duration, select **Other**.

12. **Saved**
    - **[ ]**
    - For more settings, repeat 2 - 13.

13. **Alarm setting ends**

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 4, 5, **Check All or Uncheck All**

Excluding Holidays
In 4, 5 (select day)
**Except Holidays**
**From**

Advanced
- Saving Entry Name
- Changing Alarm Tone/Video
- Setting Handset to Vibrate at Alarm Time (P.9-33)
Alarms

At Alarm Time
Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press ☎️ or a Side Key.

When Another Function is Active
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set
Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze
While Snoozing, ☎️ Yes ✅
- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm
In Alarm list, ☑️ (select entry) ✅

Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Deleting Alarm
Deleting One Entry
1 In Alarm list, ☑️ (select entry) ✅

2 Reset Alarm ✅

3 Yes ✅

Deleting All Entries
1 In Alarm list, ☑️ (select entry) ✅ ☑️ Clear All ✅

2 Enter Handset Code ✅

3 Yes ✅

Advanced
- Editing Alarm Entries (P.9-33)

- Sounding Alarm Time tone even in Manner mode

- Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P.13-15)
Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV
Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week.
- Complete Area Setup (P.6-3) beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1. Tools \(\Rightarrow\) Wakeup TV

2. \(\Rightarrow\) :--: \(\Rightarrow\) Enter hour (24-hour format) \(\Rightarrow\) Enter minutes \(\Rightarrow\)

3. Repeat: \(\Rightarrow\)

4. Selected Days: \(\Rightarrow\)
For Once or Every Day (All), skip ahead to \(\Rightarrow\).

5. Select day: \(\Rightarrow\)
Complete selection \(\Rightarrow\)

6. Channel: \(\Rightarrow\)

7. Select channel: \(\Rightarrow\)

Using Wakeup TV (Cont.)

Advanced
- Changing Alarm Tone/Video (P.9-33)
- Sounding Alarm Time tone even in Manner mode (P.13-15)

Selecting/Canceling All Days
- In 2 select day \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\)
- Complete selection \(\Rightarrow\) Except Holidays \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) From \(\Rightarrow\)

Canceling Alarm
- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps.

[Wakeup TV Menu] Alarm On/Off:
\(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Off \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\)

Adjusting Alarm Volume
[Wakeup TV Menu] Alarm Volume:
\(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) Adjust level \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\) \(\Rightarrow\)
Handy Extras

Wakeup TV

At Wakeup TV Time
TV activates after Alarm.

Stopping Alarm Instantly
While Alarm is activated, TV may not activate depending on the function.

When Another Function is Active
After TV is On for a Period of Time
Confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry

2 Wakeup TV Off
- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Deleting Wakeup TV

Deleting One Entry

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry

2 Reset Alarm

3 Yes

Deleting All Entries

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry

2 Enter Handset Code

Advanced

Editing Entries (P.9-33)
Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder
Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours.

1. Switch On/Off

2. Select Time

3. Select hour

4. Complete selection

5. Saved

6. Hour Minder setting ends

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume
In Advanced -> Adjust level
Volume:

Changing Hour Minder Duration
In Advanced -> Select time
Duration:

For custom Duration, select Other.
Selecting/Cancelling All Hours
In Check All or Uncheck All

At Hour Minder Time
Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop tone instantly, press or a Side Key.

When Another Function is Active
- Hour Minder does not activate.
- Incoming Calls
- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder
In Hour Minder menu,
Switch On/Off

Advanced
Changing Hour Minder Tone/Video
Setting Handset to Vibrate at Hour Minder Time (P.9-34)
Sounding Hour Minder Time tone even in Manner mode
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.13-15)
World Clock

Opening World Clock

1. Tools → World Clock
2. Set World Time Menu
3. Set Time Zone
4. Select area
5. World Clock ends

Opening World Clock in Standby

1. Settings → Phone Settings → Display
2. Standby Display
3. Clock/Calendar
4. World Clock (L), etc.

Advanced

Adding Custom Time Zone (P.9-34)
Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

1. Tools/Tools 2

2. Stopwatch

3. Stopwatch starts
4. Stopwatch stops
   - Press to resume.

5. Yes
   - Stopwatch ends
   - Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times
   While Stopwatch is running.
Saving Records to Notepad
   After Save to Notepad
Resetting Records
   After Reset
From

Incoming Calls
   - Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Stopwatch Window
Using Countdown Timer

1. Press Tools → Tools 2

2. Press Countdown Timer

3. Enter minutes → Enter seconds

4. Countdown starts

5. Set time elapses → Tone sounds

6. Yes → Countdown Timer ends

Resetting Timer

Stop countdown and incoming calls

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

Tone sounds after is pressed to end the call.

Incoming Calls

Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
S! Cast & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

- Transmission fees apply.
- Only available within Japan on compatible 3G handsets.

S! Cast service has been discontinued as of September 2007. Launch of an improved automatic content delivery service is planned. Please address questions to SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38).

Service Registration & Content Subscription

1. • • Entertainment • • S! CAST/Weather Icon
   • • S! Cast Menu

2. • • Registration/Cancel
   • • S! Cast Menu

Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Cast delivery.

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Cast registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

Example: ☁/ Partly cloudy with a chance of rain
Indicators for chance of rain, seasonal events, etc. appear at the same time.

Manual Update

[S! Cast Menu] ☁ Weather Icon • • Manual Update • • Yes

Advanced

- Saving Files to Data Folder • Changing Font Size • Copying Text
- Requesting Re-Delivery • Checking Weather Forecast (P.9-35)
- Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby • Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates (P.13-15)
Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

- PDF (.pdf)
- Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
- Microsoft® Word (.doc)
- Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.14-22).

Key Assignments

- View whole page
- View lower left
- Scroll
- Jump to page
- View upper left
- View lower right
- Full screen
- Open Help
- View upper right
- Next page
- Zoom out
- Previous page
- Zoom in
- Rotate 90°
- View center
- Fit width

Using Loupe

In open file, (Long)  
Zoom Out or Zoom In
Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books
Visit Sharp Space Town for e-Book order information, etc.

1 🌼 🌼 メニューリスト 🌼 🌼
2 🌼 書籍・コミック・写真集 🌼 🌼
- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

e-Book Viewer
Read XMDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 🌼 🌼 Entertainment 🌼 🌼
2 🌼 e-Book Viewer 🌼 🌼
- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®
Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu,
   BookSurfing ®
   - BookSurfing ® St Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing ® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card
- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Advanced
- Copying Text
- Opening Non-920SH e-Books (Library) (P.9-35)
Scanning Printed Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).
- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

1. Scan Barcode
2. Frame barcode in center of Display
3. Scan starts
4. Tone sounds
5. Scan results appear

Scan Window
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).
- Press \( \) to stop scan.

Key Assignments in Scan Window
- Toggle focus mode
- Focus Lock
- Mobile Light on/off
- Adjust brightness
- Open Help

Split Data
- After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over
After [\( \) \( ] \] \( ) \] \( Yes \) \( ) \]
From [\( ) \]

Advanced
- Scanning during Text Entry
- Reading Saved Barcode Images
- Using Linked Info
- Saving Scan Results
- Opening Saved Scan Results
- Saving Linked Info to Phone Book
- Saving Images & Melodies
- Opening or Playing Files
- Using Images as Wallpaper
- Using Images for System Graphics
- Pasting to Message Text
- Copying Text (P.9-36 - 9-37)
Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset.

1. Tools
   - Create QR Code

2. Data Folder
   - Select folder
   - Select file or entry

3. Text Input

4. From Phone Book Entries
   - Phone Book
   - Select entry

5. From Entered Text
   - Text Input
   - Enter text

6. Switching Storage Media
   - Save to Phone or Memory Card

7. Attaching to E-mail
   - Send As

8. Incoming Calls
   - QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR codes from Data Folder files.

1. Tools
   - Barcode/Scan

2. Create QR Code

3. Data Folder

4. Select folder
   - Select file or entry

5. QR Code is created.

6. QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).
Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.
- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1. **Tools**
   - **Tools 3**
   - **Barcode/Scan**

2. **Scan Card**

3. **Frame card on Display**

4. **Press** to stop scan.

5. **Scan results appear**

6. **New Phone Book entry is saved.**

**Key Assignments in Scan Window**
- **Toggle focus mode**
- **Focus Lock**
- **Mobile Light on/off**
- **Adjust brightness**
- **Open Help**

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit
- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage.
  - **Yes**
  - **Starting Over**

**Advanced**
- Pasting to Message Text
- Copying Text (P.9-37)
Scanning Text

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or alphanumerics).
Some text cannot be scanned.

1. Tools
   - Tools 3
   - Barcode/Scan

2. Scan Text

3. Frame in center of Display
   - Adjust to frame text in [ ].
   - Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

4. Press $ to stop scan.

5. Select line to select alternative from list or edit directly.

6. Scan results appear

Key Assignments in Scan Window
- Toggle focus mode
- Focus Lock
- Mobile Light on/off
- Adjust brightness
- Open Help

Reversed Text
- If white text in black background is distorted, follow these steps to change the mode.

Correcting Text Type
- After ( ) Change Mode
- Select type

Editing Scanned Text
- After ( ) Select/Edit
- Select text
- Select alternative from list or edit directly

Starting Over
- In ( ) Yes

Advanced
- Scanning during Text Entry
- Using Linked Info
- Saving Scan Results
- Opening Saved Scan Results
- Saving Linked Info to Phone Book
- Pasting to Message Text
- Copying Text (P.9-36 - 9-37)
Handy Extras

Management Tools

Deleting All Schedules
- [Calendar Window] ( ) ( ) Delete
  ( ) All Appointments ( )
  Enter Handset Code ( ) ( ) Yes ( )

Managing Tasks
Deleting All Tasks
- [Task List] ( ) ( ) Delete ( )
  ( ) All Tasks ( ) Enter Handset Code ( ) ( ) Yes ( )

Notepad
Editing Notepad
- [Notepad List] ( ) Select entry ( )
  Edit text ( )

Changing Category
- [Notepad List] ( ) Select entry ( )
  Change Category ( )
  Select Category ( )

Inserting Notepad Text
- In a text entry window,
  NotePad ( ) ( ) All
  Call NotePad ( ) ( ) Select entry ( )

Expenses Memo
Changing Category of Saved Entry
- [Expenses Memo List] ( ) Select entry ( ) ( ) Select Category ( )

Changing Amount
- [Expenses Memo List] ( ) Select entry ( ) ( ) Change Amount
  Edit ( )

Voice Recorder
Saving Longer Recordings
- [Recording Window] ( ) ( )
  Record Time ( ) ( )
  Extended Voice ( )

Sending Voice Files via S! Mail
- [Recording Window] ( ) ( )
  Recording starts ( ) Recording stops ( )
  Save and Send ( )
  Complete message ( )

Switching Storage Media
- Available in For Message mode.
  Set to Ask Each Time to select media after every recording.

Additional Functions

Deleting All Schedules
- [Calendar Window] P. 9-3
  [Task List] P. 9-7
  [Notepad List] P. 9-8
  [Expenses Memo List] P. 9-9
  [Recording Window] P. 9-10

Deleting All Tasks

Editing Notepad
- [Calendar Window] P. 9-3
  [Task List] P. 9-7
  [Notepad List] P. 9-8
  [Expenses Memo List] P. 9-9
  [Recording Window] P. 9-10

Editing Text
- [Notepad List] ( ) Select entry ( )
  Edit text ( )

Changing Category
- [Notepad List] ( ) Select entry ( )
  Change Category ( )
  Select Category ( )

Inserting Notepad Text
- In a text entry window,
  NotePad ( ) ( ) All
  Call NotePad ( ) ( ) Select entry ( )

Changing Memo
- [Expenses Memo List] ( ) Select entry ( ) ( ) Select Category ( )

Changing Amount
- [Expenses Memo List] ( ) Select entry ( ) ( ) Change Amount
  Edit ( )

Voice Recorder
Saving Longer Recordings
- [Recording Window] ( ) ( )
  Record Time ( ) ( )
  Extended Voice ( )

Sending Voice Files via S! Mail
- [Recording Window] ( ) ( )
  Recording starts ( ) Recording stops ( )
  Save and Send ( )
  Complete message ( )

Switching Storage Media
- Available in For Message mode.
  Set to Ask Each Time to select media after every recording.
Handy Extras

**S! FeliCa**

**Enabling to View Lifestyle-Appli Balances**

- [IC Card Settings Menu] 
  - Balance Info 
  - Enter Handset Code 
  - Select Application

- For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications.
- Start Lifestyle-Applic once before adding it to Balance Info list.

**Moving Applications Up/Down Balance Info List**

- [IC Card Settings Menu] 
  - Balance Info 
  - Enter Handset Code 
  - Select Application

**Removing Applications from Balance Info List**

- [IC Card Settings Menu] 
  - Balance Info 
  - Enter Handset Code 
  - Select Application 
  - Delete

**Calculating**

**S! Enabling to View**

- Lifestyle-Applic Balances

**P.9-13**

**Additional Functions**

**Handy Extras**

**Note:**

- To view balances, use 
- Start Lifestyle-Applic once before adding it to Balance Info list.
- Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.

**Changing IC Card Lock Notice Recipient**

**P.9-15**

**Copying Calculation Results**

**P.9-14**

**Changing Required Missed Call Count for Call Remote Lock**

**P.9-12**

**Changing Exchange Rate for Currency Conversion**

**P.9-14**

**Converting Currencies**

**P.9-12**

- Set Exchange Rate beforehand.
Handy Extras

Alarms

- Saving Entry Name
  - [Alarm Menu] [Subject: ] [Enter name: ]

- Changing Alarm Tone/Video
  - Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File
    - [Alarm Menu] [Assign Tone/Video: ] [Select folder]
  - Using Custom Screen Tone/Video
    - [Alarm Menu] [Assign Tone/Video: ] [Custom Screen]

Setting Handset to Vibrate at Alarm Time

- [Alarm Menu] [Vibration: ] [On or Link to Sound: ]
  - Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Editing Alarm Entries

- [Alarm Menu] [Select entry: ] [Select item: ] [Edit in the same manner as saving entries]

Wakeup TV

- Changing Alarm Tone/Video
  - Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File
    - [Wakeup TV Menu] [Assign Tone/Video: ] [Select folder]
  - Using Custom Screen Tone/Video
    - [Wakeup TV Menu] [Assign Tone/Video: ] [Custom Screen]

Editing Entries

- [Wakeup TV List] [Select entry: ] [Select item: ] [Edit in the same manner as saving entries]
Handy Extras

Hour Minder

- Changing Hour Minder Tone/Video
  - Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File
    - [Hour Minder Menu] > [Advanced]
      - Assign Tone/Video:
        - Select tone/file
  - Using Custom Screen Tone/Video
    - [Hour Minder Menu] > [Advanced]
      - Custom Screen:
        - Select tone/file

- Setting Handset to Vibrate at Hour Minder Time
  - [Hour Minder Menu] > [Advanced]
    - Vibration:
      - On or Link to Sound:
        - Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

World Clock

- Adding Custom Time Zone
  - [Set World Time Menu] > [Set Time Zone]
    - Enter city name or enter time difference

Handy Extras

Additional Functions

S! Cast

- Saving Files to Data Folder
  - [S! Cast Page] [Select file] [Save]

- Changing Font Size
  - [S! Cast Page] [Select size]

- Copying Text
  - [S! Cast Page] [Select first character] [Select end point]

- Requesting Re-Delivery
  - [S! Cast Menu] [Get Latest Contents]

Checking Weather Forecast

- [S! Cast Menu] [Weather Icon]

E-Books

- Copying Text
  - In open page, [Select first character] [Select end point]

- Opening Non-920SH e-Books (Library)
  - [Entertainment Menu] [Select file]

- Some files may not open.
**Handy Extras**

**Scanner**

**Scan Barcode**

- Scanning during Text Entry

  - Pasting All Scan Results
    - In a text entry window, Scan → Text Scanner → Scan Code → Frame barcode in center of Display → Select first character → Select end point →
  
  - Pasting a Part of Scan Results
    - In a text entry window, Scan → Text Scanner → Scan Code → Frame barcode in center of Display → Select line →

- Reading Saved Barcode Images

  - [Barcode/Scan Menu] → Open Barcode → Select file →

**Scan Text**

- Scanning during Text Entry

  - In a text entry window, Scan → Text Scanner → Frame text in center of Display → Select line →

**Scan Results**

- Using Linked Info

  - [Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] → Select number →

- Dialing Numbers

  - [Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] → Select mail address → Complete message →

- Sending Messages

  - [Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] → Select file →

  - When MAIL TO: appears in scan results, press → to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window.

**Accessing Internet Sites**

- Select URL →

**Saving Scan Results**

- [Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] → Select URL →

**Opening Saved Scan Results**

- [Barcode/Scan Menu] → Scanned Results → Select file →

  - Select a file and press → to open properties, rename files or delete files.
  - Some files may not open.
Scanner

Handy Extras

Additional Functions

- **Turning on Scanner**
  - To turn on the scanner, press and hold the scanner button.

- **Saving Linked Info to Phone Book**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number or mail address, then press % to save to Phone Book.

- **Saving Images & Melodies**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the file and press % to save it to a data folder.

- **Opening or Playing Files**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the file and press % to open or play it.

- **Using Images as Wallpaper**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select an image and press % to set it as wallpaper.

- **Using Images for System Graphics**
  - Some images may be usable without specifying display area.

- **Pasting to Message Text**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL to paste it into a message.

- **Copying Text**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the text and press % to copy it.

- **Selected Text**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the first character, then press % to specify the display area.

- **Number, Address, or URL**
  - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL, then press % to copy it.

- **Table of Functions**
  - Scan Results Window
    - Scan Results Window
    - [Scan Results Window]
    - Select number or mail address
    - Save to Ph.Book
    - As New Entry
    - Complete other fields
    - Scan Results Window
    - [Scanned Text Window]
    - Barcode: P.9-26, Card: P.9-28
    - [Scanned Text Window]
    - P.9-29
    - Saving Linked Info to Phone Book
    - To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
    - When MEMORY: appears in scan results, press % to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.
    - Saving Images & Melodies
    - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select a file and press % to save it to a data folder.
    - Opening or Playing Files
    - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select a file and press % to open or play it.
    - Using Images as Wallpaper
      - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select an image and press % to set it as wallpaper.
    - Using Images for System Graphics
      - Some images may be usable without specifying display area.
    - Pasting to Message Text
      - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL to paste it into a message.
    - Copying Text
      - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the text and press % to copy it.
    - Selected Text
      - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the first character, then press % to specify the display area.
    - Number, Address, or URL
      - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL, then press % to copy it.

- **More Functions**
  - Additional Functions
    - Scanner
      - 0 4 4
      - [Scan Results Window]
        - Barcode: P.9-26, Card: P.9-28
        - [Scanned Text Window]
          - P.9-29
      - [Scan Results Window]
        - [Scan Results Window]
          - Select number or mail address
          - Save to Ph.Book
          - As New Entry
          - Complete other fields
          - [Scan Results Window]
            - [Scan Results Window]
              - Barcode: P.9-26, Card: P.9-28
              - [Scanned Text Window]
                - P.9-29
              - Saving Linked Info to Phone Book
                - To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
                - When MEMORY: appears in scan results, press % to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.
              - Saving Images & Melodies
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select a file and press % to save it to a data folder.
              - Opening or Playing Files
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select a file and press % to open or play it.
              - Using Images as Wallpaper
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select an image and press % to set it as wallpaper.
              - Using Images for System Graphics
                - Some images may be usable without specifying display area.
              - Pasting to Message Text
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL to paste it into a message.
              - Copying Text
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the text and press % to copy it.
              - Selected Text
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the first character, then press % to specify the display area.
              - Number, Address, or URL
                - In the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window], select the number, mail address, or URL, then press % to copy it.

- **More Information**
  - More information about the scanner functions can be found in the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window].

- **Troubleshooting**
  - If you encounter any issues, refer to the troubleshooting section in the [Scan Results Window] or [Scanned Text Window].
10
Communication Services

S! Friend’s Status.......................... 10-2
   Using S! Friend's Status.......... 10-2
S! Circle Talk............................. 10-5
   Using S! Circle Talk .......... 10-5
Near Chat.................................. 10-8
   Using Near Chat (Japanese).... 10-8
Using S! Friend's Status

• S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
• Set Connection status to Online beforehand.

Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment.

1. **(Long)**
   When using S! Friend's Status for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press %, then skip ahead to 2.

   ![My Status Window](image)
   - If Connection status is Online, skip ahead to 3.

2. **Offline » Online**
   - Only Standby Window On/Off is available when Connection status is Offline.

3. **Select Status, e.g., incipal » Select new Status**

4. **Select Availability, e.g., Answer OK » Select new Availability**

5. **<Add Comment> » Enter text »**

6. **Update starts**

Changing Availability Settings at Once

[My Status Window] » Select Answer Status, e.g., All OK » Select new Answer Status »

Hiding My Status in Standby Window

[My Status Window] » Standby Window On » Off »

Advanced

- Disabling S! Friend's Status & S! Circle Talk (P.13-16)
Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book for the first time. To add members, see P.10-4.

1. **Communication**
   - **SI Friend’s Status**
   - **Yes**

2. **Phone Book**
   - **Select entry**

3. **Select phone number**
   - Omit if only one number is saved.

4. **Yes**
   - Registration request is sent to the number. Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.

**When Registration is Complete**
- My Status is sent and member’s status appears on handset.

**Direct Entry**
- In **Add New Entry**
  - **Enter phone number**

**Registering from Received Request**

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

1. **Yes**
   - Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

**Rejecting**
- In **No**
  - Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.

**Opening Member Status**

1. **Communication**
   - **SI Friend’s Status**
   - **Select Group**

2. **Select member**

**When Cancellation Notice Arrives**
- Member is deleted from S! Friend’s Status member list.

**Advanced**
- Adding Members
- Deleting Members
- Moving Members
- Renaming Groups
- Updating Manually
- Opening Notices (P.10-4)
- Rejecting requests from unsaved numbers
- Rejecting all requests (P.13-16)
Adding Members

- Select method
- Select entry or enter phone number
- Yes

Deleting Members

- Select member
- Registration Release
- Yes

Moving Members

- Select member
- Change Group
- Select target Group

Renaming Groups

- Edit Group Name
- Enter name

Opening Notices

- Status Notif. List
- Select notice

Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be registered for 24 hours.

Accept or reject registration requests.
Using S! Circle Talk

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during Circle Talk.

**Registering Members**
Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book.

1. When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose Yes and press [%], then skip ahead to 3.

2. <Add New Entry> •

3. Group • • Group Name: • Enter name •

4. Select number, e.g., No.1:

5. Phone Book • • Select entry •

6. Select phone number •

7. Saved

---

**Advanced**

- Editing Member List (P.10-7)
- Disabling S! Friend's Status & S! Circle Talk (P.13-16)
S! Circle Talk

Initiating S! Circle Talk
Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members. Set My Status to Online first (P.10-2 1 - 2).

1 Press and hold [ ] when [ ] Press and Hold appears

You have the floor.

2 Select member or Group

Transmission starts

S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.

To be the First Speaker
After [ ], press and hold [ ]
Direct Entry
Enter phone number [ ]
Transmission starts

S! Circle Talk Operations

Speaking

Press and hold [ ] when [ ] Press and Hold appears

You have the floor.

Keep holding [ ] to speak
Release [ ]
Floor is released

Loudspeaker
During S! Circle Talk, [ ]
Press to toggle Loudspeaker on/off.

Exiting S! Circle Talk

1 Connection ends

S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk

Select most recent
S! Circle Talk record
Rejoin Circle Talk

An error message appears when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1 While handset is ringing/vibrating, [ ] S! Circle Talk starts

Advanced

Canceling Loudspeaker (P.13-16)
- **Editing Member List**

  - **Replacing Individual Members**
    - [S! Circle Talk Member List]  
      - Select member → Edit → Select method → Select entry

  - **Editing Groups**
    - [S! Circle Talk Member List]  
      - Select Group → Edit → Select target → Edit/enter

  - **Deleting Members or Groups**
    - [S! Circle Talk Member List]  
      - Select member or Group → Delete → Yes

  - **Deleting Group Members**
    - [S! Circle Talk Member List]  
      - Select Group → Edit → Select member → Delete → Yes
Using Near Chat (Japanese)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (P.13-14) that may be used to reset the application password.
- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

1. **Sending Near Chat Request**
   - **Yes**
   - Near Chat S! Application starts.
   - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

2. **Receiving Near Chat Request**
   - **Yes**
   - Near Chat S! Application starts.
   - For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

3. After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and Bluetooth® Notification appears.

4. **Rejecting Request**
   - In **No**
   - Reviewing Last Received Request
   - Connectivity → Bluetooth
   - My Device Settings
   - S! Appli Request → Latest Information

- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.
## Handset Security

### Operations Security

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Password Lock</th>
<th>Restrict access to handset functions.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Lock when handset is closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once</td>
<td>One time lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At Power On</td>
<td>Lock when handset is turned on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Settings ➔ Phone Settings ➔ Locks ➔ Password Lock ➔ PIN Entry ➔ [Standby] Enter Handset Code ➔ Enter PIN1

#### Unlocking Handset

- When Password Lock is Active
  - Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

#### PIN Entry

- Activate PIN Entry to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

1. In Locks menu, PIN Entry ➔ Switch On/Off
2. On ➔ Enter PIN1

#### Secure Remote Lock

- Lock lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock (P.9-12).

For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (P.14-21) or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.

#### Advanced

- Changing PIN1 ➔ Changing PIN2 (P.11-4)
Information Security

Phone Book Lock
Restrict access to Phone Book information.

1. **Settings**
   - **Phone Settings**
   - **Locks**

2. **Phone Book Lock**

3. **On**
   - Enter Handset Code

Temporary Access to Phone Book
- When accessing Phone Book, enter Handset Code and press.

History Lock
Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1. In Locks menu, **History Lock**

2. Select item
   - ( appears)
   - Enter Handset Code

Temporary Access to Records
- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press.

Show Secret Data
Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries.

1. In Locks menu, **Show Secret Data**

2. **On**
   - Enter Handset Code

Temporary Access to Records
- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press.
### Handset Security

#### PIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIN Entry</th>
<th>Change PIN</th>
<th>Enter current PIN1</th>
<th>Enter new PIN1</th>
<th>Re-enter new PIN1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Locks Menu]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Changing PIN1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change PIN2</th>
<th>Enter current PIN2</th>
<th>Enter new PIN2</th>
<th>Re-enter new PIN2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Locks Menu]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Changing PIN2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change PIN2</th>
<th>Enter current PIN2</th>
<th>Enter new PIN2</th>
<th>Re-enter new PIN2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Locks Menu]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Connectivity & File Backup

Infrared ........................................ 12-2
Transferring Files via Infrared .... 12-3
Bluetooth® ...................................... 12-6
Transferring Files via Bluetooth® ... 12-7
Mass Storage ................................. 12-10
Connecting to PC ......................... 12-10

Backup ........................................ 12-11
Backup & Restore ......................... 12-11
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ...12-14
About S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ......................... 12-14
Backup & Restore ......................... 12-16
Infrared

Wirelessly transfer the following files between 920SH and compatible devices.

- Phone Book
- Calendar
- Tasks
- Notepad
- Bookmarks
- Received Msg.
- Sent Messages
- Drafts
- Templates
- Data Folder
- Memory Card files
- Received Folder
- IrSS Transfer

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

- Align Infrared Ports of both devices.
- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options

- One File Transfer
  - Transfer single files
- All File Transfer
  - Transfer all files by function
- Receive Folder
  - Receive a folder with Data Folder files. (Handset does not support sending folders.)
- IrSS Transfer
  - Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed

Authorisation Code

- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorisation Code is changeable for each transfer.)
Transferring Files via Infrared

**Receiving Files**

1. 🛠️ Settings 🔧 Connectivity 🛠️ Infrared 🛠️
   - Infrared Menu

2. 🔧 Switch On/Off 🔧 On(3 min.) 🔧
   - Infrared is activated.
   - Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
   - Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

3. Connection request arrives
   - Request Window

4. Perform subsequent operations
   - To cancel transfer, press 🟢.

**Subsequent Operations**

- **One File Transfer**
  - Yes 🟢 Yes 🟢
  - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press 🟢.

- **All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
  - Yes 🟢 🟢 Enter Authorisation Code 🟢 🟢 As New Items 🟢 🟢
  - Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender’s.

- **IrSS Transfer**
  - Yes 🟢 🟢
  - Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

**Advanced**

- 📡 Overwriting Existing Files 📡 Sending My Details 📡 Sending Non-Phone Book Files (P.12-5)
**Infrared**

**Sending Files**

- **One File Transfer**
  - Example: Phone Book Entries
    1. Select entry
    2. Via Infrared
    3. Yes or No

- **All File Transfer**
  - When Sending Phone Book
    1. In Infrared menu, Send All
    2. Yes
    3. Enter Handset Code
    4. Yes or No

- **Sending JPEG Images at High Speed**
  - Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

**Data Folder**

- **DCIM**
  - For DCIM, select a folder and press.

**Select image**

- When finished, file list returns.

---

When Sending Phone Book

- In 3, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures.
  - Yes or No
## Connectivity & File Backup

### Infrared

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[Request Window]</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>Enter Authorisation Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Delete All &amp; Save</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enter Handset Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

### Sending My Details

- Enter Authorisation Code
- Yes
- Send My Card
- Via Infrared
- Yes
- Transfer starts

### Sending Non-Phone Book Files

- In file list, (select file)
- Send
- Via Infrared
- Yes
- Transfer starts

Transfer starts
Bluetooth

Wirelessly transfer files between 920SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.

Getting Started

- Bluetooth® Precautions
  - Bring handsets to within ten meters.
    - (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)
  - TV audio is supported only on Bluetooth® devices compliant with SCMS-T copyright protection standard.

- Handsfree Device Precautions
  - Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.
  - Handle call operations on the device in use.

- Bluetooth® Watches
  - Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions.
    - Time Correction
    - News Notice
    - Remote Shutter
    - Quick Silent
    - Hold Calls
    - Alarm Notice
    - Mail Notice
    - Mode Settings
    - Caller ID Notice
    - Operator Notice

- Bluetooth® Connection
  - Authorisation Code
    - 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.

Advanced

- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset
- Disabling Bluetooth® watch response to incoming mail, etc. (P.13-17)
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

**Activating Bluetooth®**

1. **Settings** ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Bluetooth**
   - Bluetooth® is activated.
   - Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

2. **Switch On/Off** ➔ **On**
   - Bluetooth® is activated.
   - Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

**Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices**

**Device Search & Pairing**
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

1. In Bluetooth menu, **Search for Devices** ➔
   - Found devices are listed after search.
   - Press to cancel.

2. **Select device** ➔
   - If handset is already connected to another device, choose Yes and press .

3. **Enter the same Authorisation Code for handset and the other device** ➔
   - On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
   - For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.

4. **Paring complete**
   - Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

**Connecting to Paired Devices**

1. In Bluetooth menu, **Paired Devices** ➔

   - All Paired Devices List

2. **Select device** ➔
   - If handset is already connected to another device, choose Yes and press .
   - The device is connected and (checked) appears. Devices marked with (checked) will reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.

**Advanced**

- Renaming Paired Devices
- Deleting Paired Devices
- Disconnecting Devices (P.12-9)
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled (P.13-17)
Accepting Connection Requests
Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices.

1 Connection request arrives
   - Connection request arrives
   - Request Window

2 Yes
   - Enter the same number as the target device

3 Enter the same Authorisation Code as sender's
   - On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
   - For headset devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.

Transferring Files
Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see P.12-2.
- When requested, enter Authorisation Code.

Receiving
1 Connection request arrives
   - Yes
2 Yes
   - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press Yes.
   - To cancel transfer, press Yes.

All File Transfer
1 In Bluetooth menu, Send All
2 Select device
3 Select item
   - Transfer starts
   - When finished, Send All menu returns.

One File Transfer
Example: Phone Book Entries
1 Select entry
2 Via Bluetooth

Advanced
- Overwriting Existing Files
- Sending My Details
- Sending Non-Phone Book Files
- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests (P.13-17)
Connectivity & File Backup

Renaming Paired Devices

- [Bluetooth Menu]  Paired Devices  Select device  Change Name  Enter name

Deleting Paired Devices

- [Bluetooth Menu]  Paired Device  Select device  Delete  Yes

- To delete a device connected to handset, choose Yes and press .

Disconnecting Devices

- [All Paired Devices List]  Select device type  Select device

Overwriting Existing Files

- [Request Window]  Yes
- Delete All & Save
- Yes  Enter Handset Code

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending My Details

- Send My Card  Via Bluetooth
- Select device  Yes  Transfer starts

Sending Non-Phone Book Files

- In file list, (select file)  Send  Via Bluetooth
- Select device  Yes  Transfer starts
Mass Storage

Connecting to PC

1. **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **USB Mode**
   - Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset. If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

2. **Mass Storage**

3. **Yes**

4. **Yes**

5. **Connection ends**
   - Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Supplied CD-ROM contains these utility software programs:

- **Modem Wizard**
  - Use handset as a modem
- **Handset Manager**
  - Transfer files between handset and PC
- **Memory Card Transfer Software**
  - Transfer files on Memory Cards formatted for other SoftBank handsets by SHARP to Memory Cards for handset
- **PC Document Conversion Utility**
  - Convert PC files to view them on handset

USB Cable driver is also contained.

For details, see **Utility Software Starter Guide (Japanese)** on Utility Software CD-ROM.

Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time; check transmission fees while online.
Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.
The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:

- Received Msg.
- Drafts
- Templates
- Sent Messages
- Phone Book
- Mail Groups
- Calendar
- Tasks
- Notepad
- Bookmarks
- User Dictionary
- My Pictograms
- Contents Keys

Precautions
- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly.
- Received Msg.
  - SI! Mail Notices are restored as normal messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
  - Transfer deletes Auto Sort Keys.
  - If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- Drafts
  - If transferred from Drafts, only the first entered recipient remains or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

- Bookmarks
  - Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.
- Contents Keys
  - Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
  - While Keys are on Memory Card, related files are inaccessible. (Perform Restore to use those files.)
Backup

Handset to Memory Card

1. Settings
2. Connectivity
3. Memory Card
4. Backup/Restore

5. Select item
   For Select All, Phone Book or Contents Keys confirmation appears. Choose Yes or No and press .
   To cancel, press .

Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Contents Keys).

In Backup/Restore menu, Restore

1. Select item
2. Enter Handset Code

For Select All, repeat 1 for each item.
To skip an item, press .

If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

Yes

Advanced

Encoded Data for Backup
Deleting Backup Files (P.12-13)
Encoding Data for Backup

[Backup/Restore Menu] Encode On
Select item:

- Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.

Deleting Backup Files

[Backup File List] Select file

Yes
About S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB, add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.

SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.12-15).
Use a PC to edit SAB online.
For more about SAB, see the corresponding Website (P.14-21).
Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup/Restore</th>
<th>Backup</th>
<th>Export Phone Book content to SAB&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restore</td>
<td>Import SAB content to Phone Book&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronize</td>
<td>Sync from Client</td>
<td>Add Phone Book changes to SAB&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sync from Server</td>
<td>Add SAB changes to Phone Book&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit on PC</td>
<td>Import from PC</td>
<td>Upload PC address book info to SAB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Export to PC</td>
<td>Export SAB content to PC address book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Edit on PC     | Birthday Notification | SAB sends reminders via SMS to handsets |
|                | Email Address Notification | Send new handset mail address to specified addresses |
|                | Disaster Message Board Message Notification | Send emergency message board update to specified addresses |

| Spam Filter    | Tomodachi Email Filter<sup>7</sup> | Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB |
|                |                                | |

<sup>1</sup> Any existing SAB content is deleted.
<sup>2</sup> Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.
<sup>3</sup> If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.
<sup>4</sup> Unrelated SAB changes remain.
<sup>5</sup> Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.
<sup>6</sup> Access this function via handset or a PC.
<sup>7</sup> Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.
Connectivity & File Backup

S! Addressbook

Precautions

- Unsynchronizable Items
  SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:
  - Picture, Toner/Video, Vibration

- Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion
  - When no Phone Book content exists, selecting Synchronize, Sync from Client or Backup deletes all SAB content.
  - When no SAB content exists, selecting Synchronize, Sync from Server or Restore deletes all Phone Book content.

- Phone Book ↔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities
  - When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

- Contract Termination
  - SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

- SAB Transfers to New Handsets
  - SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets
    - SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
  - Other 3G Handsets
    - SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
  - V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series
    - Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

- Availability
  - SAB is only accessible within Japan.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract
Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.

Receive User ID & Password
After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.
- User ID and Password are required to use SAB via a PC.

Use SAB
Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

- Unsynchronizable Items
  SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:
  - Picture, Toner/Video, Vibration

- Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion
  - When no Phone Book content exists, selecting Synchronize, Sync from Client or Backup deletes all SAB content.
  - When no SAB content exists, selecting Synchronize, Sync from Server or Restore deletes all Phone Book content.

- Phone Book ↔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities
  - When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

- Contract Termination
  - SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

- SAB Transfers to New Handsets
  - SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets
    - SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
  - Other 3G Handsets
    - SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
  - V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series
    - Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

- Availability
  - SAB is only accessible within Japan.

Advanced

- Confirming User ID & Password (P.12-17)
Confirming User ID & Password

- Menu: Confirming User ID & Password
- My SoftBank
- English
- Password confirmation for S! Address Book
- Follow onscreen instructions

Auto Synchronization

- Activating
  - [S! Addressbook Menu] Auto Sync Settings
  - Handset Code
  - Set On/Off
- Changing Auto Sync Frequency
  - [S! Addressbook Menu] Auto Sync Settings
  - Handset Code
  - Set On/Off
  - Frequency
  - Select frequency
  - Enter/select date/time/day of the week

Changing Auto Sync Command

- [S! Addressbook Menu] Auto Sync Settings
- Handset Code
- Set On/Off
- Sync Mode
- Select command

Opening Log

- [S! Addressbook Menu] Sync History
- Select record
Handset Customization

Phone Settings .................................. 13-2
Display .......................................... 13-3
Ringtones & Sounds ......................... 13-5
Text Entry & Phone Book ................. 13-6
Calling .......................................... 13-7
Messaging ...................................... 13-8
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser ... 13-10

Digital TV ...................................... 13-11
Camera & Media Player .................... 13-13
S! Applications .............................. 13-14
Handy Extras ................................. 13-15
Communication Services ............... 13-16
Connectivity ................................. 13-17
Reset ............................................ 13-18
# Phone Settings

## Mode

- **Selecting a handset mode**
  - Select mode

- **Customizing handset modes**
  - Select mode
  - Select item
  - Adjust settings

  *Not available for Normal mode.*

## Date & Time

- **Setting the date and time**
  - Set Date/Time
  - Enter the year
  - Enter the month
  - Enter the day
  - Enter the time

- **Correcting Clock manually**
  - Time Correction
  - Manual
  - Yes

- **Activating Daylight Saving**
  - Daylight Saving
  - On

- **Changing Time Zone**
  - Set Time Zone
  - Select area

- **Changing time format to 12 hour**
  - Time Format
  - 12 Hour

- **Changing date format**
  - Date Format
  - Select option

- **Starting the Calendar week on Monday**
  - Calendar Format
  - Monday-Sunday
### Display Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Language</strong></th>
<th><strong>Start Here</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switching interface between Japanese and English</td>
<td>Language or 語言選択</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Display Image</strong></th>
<th><strong>Start Here</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.</td>
<td>System Graphics Select item Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.</td>
<td>System Graphics Select item Select folder Specify display area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing Custom Screen images for incoming calls, etc.</td>
<td>System Graphics Select item Custom Screen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Display Illumination</strong></th>
<th><strong>Start Here</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time</td>
<td>Backlight Time Out Select time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Display Brightness</td>
<td>Backlight Brightness Adjust level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling/activating Light Sensor</td>
<td>Backlight Brightness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off</td>
<td>Display Saving Select a period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Display Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External Display</th>
<th>Settings</th>
<th>Phone Settings</th>
<th>Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off</td>
<td>External Display</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Select time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding new received messages</td>
<td>External Display</td>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>Not Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding caller’s number/name</td>
<td>External Display</td>
<td>Caller Display</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Display Settings</th>
<th>Settings</th>
<th>Phone Settings</th>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Standby Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing Clock/Calendar</td>
<td>Clock/Calendar</td>
<td>Select type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding indicators in Standby</td>
<td>Show Indicators</td>
<td>Status Area</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing Softkeys in Standby</td>
<td>Show Indicators</td>
<td>Softkey Area</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Ringtone & Sound Settings

#### Handset Response
- **Changing ringtone volume**
  - Volume
  - Select Item
  - Adjust level
- **Changing Event Light illumination option**
  - Event Light
  - Select Item
  - Switch On/Off
  - On, Link to Sound or Off
- **Changing Event Light color**
  - Event Light
  - Select Item
  - Light Colour
  - Select color
- **Answering calls with other keys**
  - Any Key Answer
  - On
  - Use 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, * or # in addition to 0.

#### System Sound
- **Changing Keypad Tones**
  - System Sounds
  - Keypad Tones
  - Select tone
- **Disabling Keypad Tones**
  - System Sounds
  - Keypad Tones
  - Off
- **Changing S! Circle Talk tone**
  - System Sounds
  - S! Circle Talk
  - Select tone
- **Changing other System Sounds**
  - System Sounds
  - Select Item
  - Tone
  - Select folder
  - For files with limited usage period, choose Yes and press .

#### Additional Sound Setting
- **Disabling Speaker when using Headphones**
  - Ringer Output
  - Earphone
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Entry &amp; Phone Book Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Text Entry</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="text_entry.png" alt="Start Here" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="text_entry.png" alt="Text Entry Window" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling suggestions based on entered characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling suggestions based on entered words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding emoticons in suggestion list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowering type priorities in suggestion list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing suggestions in single column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phone Book</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="phone_book.png" alt="Start Here" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="phone_book.png" alt="Phone" /> <img src="phone_book.png" alt="Ph.Book Settings" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching reference Phone Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing default storage media for new entries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding confirmation after calls with unsaved numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Advanced Call Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voice Call &amp; Video Call</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setting handset to beep once each minute during calls</td>
<td>Minute Minder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing Call Cost after each call</td>
<td>Disp. Time/Call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding Call Time during calls</td>
<td>Disp. Time/Call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video Call</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing Alternative Image</td>
<td>Camera Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing quality of Incoming Images</td>
<td>Incoming Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing quality of Outgoing Images</td>
<td>Outgoing Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Calls</td>
<td>Loudspeaker</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Packet Transmission</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Checking the most recent packet transmission volume</td>
<td>Data Counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking all packet transmission volume</td>
<td>Data Counter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Call Setting</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activating auto call answer when Display is rotated from Cycloid to portrait position</td>
<td>Rotate Back to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Advanced Messaging Settings

#### General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiding progress bar while sending messages</td>
<td>Sending Status: Off (Background)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requesting Delivery Report for all messages</td>
<td>Delivery Report: On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling automatic deletion of oldest received messages</td>
<td>Auto Delete: Received Msg. Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages</td>
<td>Auto Delete: Sent Messages Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages</td>
<td>Auto Resend: Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling Animation View</td>
<td>Animation View: Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders</td>
<td>Message Notice: Secret Folder No Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing message list view</td>
<td>Message List View: List View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening list of all messages in Received Msg. folder</td>
<td>Received Msg. View: List View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening list of all messages in Sent Messages folder</td>
<td>Sent Msg. View: List View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing message window scroll unit</td>
<td>Scroll Unit: Select unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Feeling Mail

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiding subject, sender, etc. above Information window</td>
<td>Idle Screen Info: Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling Small Light illumination</td>
<td>Light: Switch On/Off Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Small Light color</td>
<td>Light: Light Colour: Select item Select color Select color:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing handset vibration pattern</td>
<td>Vibration Pattern: On/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling tone/video for incoming Feeling Mail</td>
<td>Ringtone: Switch On/Off Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing tone/video for incoming Feeling Mail</td>
<td>Ringtone: Assign Tone Select item Select folder Select tone/file Enter time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing tone/video duration for incoming Feeling Mail</td>
<td>Ringtone: Duration Enter time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Advanced Messaging Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3D Pictogram</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabling 3D Pictogram for read/unread messages</td>
<td>Display Effect: Always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling 3D Pictogram for all received messages</td>
<td>Display Effect: Disable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing background color</td>
<td>Background Colour: Select color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing animation speed</td>
<td>Display Speed: High or Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S! Mail</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad</td>
<td>Message DL(Abroad): Auto (All)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When set to Auto (All), complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; may incur high charges. Use Manual whenever possible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling image auto-resize</td>
<td>Picture Appearance: Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling image auto-open</td>
<td>Auto Play File: Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabling sound auto-play</td>
<td>Auto Play File: On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SMS</th>
<th>Start Here</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing Server sent message storage limit</td>
<td>Expiry Time: Select option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Advanced Internet Settings

#### Common Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Changing character size</td>
<td>Font Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing scroll unit</td>
<td>Scroll Settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll</td>
<td>Scroll Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling automatic image download</td>
<td>Page Navigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling automatic sound playback</td>
<td>Do not Play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearing cookies</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearing authentication information</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Memory Card as primary download storage</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reseting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoring default browser settings</td>
<td>Memory Operation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PC Site Browser

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiding PC Site Browser activation/change confirmation</td>
<td>PC Site Browser Settings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

For some settings, the following notes apply:

- **Warning Message**: Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.
- **Enter Handset Code**: Yes
- **Prefer Card**: Yes
- **Enter Handset Code**: Yes
## Advanced TV Settings

### Image
- Adjusting Display Brightness: Adjust level
- Canceling/activating Light Sensor: Adjust level
- Adjusting Brightness automatically for current image: Adjust level
- Adjusting Display Contrast: Adjust level
- Adjusting black level: Adjust level
- Adjusting color density: Adjust level
- Adjusting color tone: Adjust level
- Adjusting Sharpness: Adjust level
- Restoring default Image settings: Reset

*Image settings apply to the current AV mode.*

### Tone
- Selecting sound option: Select option

*Tone setting applies to the current AV mode.*

### Data Broadcast
- Recording content without text data: Set Broadcast Data
- Subtitle

*Subtitle setting applies to the current AV mode.*
### Handset Customization

#### Handset Response

- Showing calls or SI Circle Talk requests while watching TV
  - Calls & Alarms
  - Select item
  - Notice a Call
- Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation
  - Call Time Shift
  - Off

#### Digital TV

- **Advanced TV Settings**

#### TV Timer

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings
  - TV Alarm

#### Handset Response

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

#### TV Timer

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings
  - TV Alarm

#### Reception Area & Channel

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Digital TV
  - Set Channels

#### Additional TV Settings

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

#### Handset Response

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

#### TV Timer

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings
  - TV Alarm

#### Reception Area & Channel

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Digital TV
  - Set Channels

#### Additional TV Settings

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

#### Handset Response

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

#### TV Timer

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings
  - TV Alarm

#### Reception Area & Channel

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Digital TV
  - Set Channels

#### Additional TV Settings

- **Start Here**
  - TV
  - Settings

---

- **Handset Response**
  - Showing calls or SI Circle Talk requests while watching TV
  - Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation

- **TV Timer**
  - Changing TV Alarm Time

- **Reception Area & Channel**
  - Renaming Areas
  - Updating all channels in the Area
  - Assigning key function to
  - Reassigning channels to other keys
  - Deleting channels

- **Additional TV Settings**
  - Enlarging display size for portrait position
  - Reducing display size for Cycloid position
  - Listening to audio from Speaker
  - Switching audio output to wireless device
  - Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time
  - Disabling auto power off when handset is closed
## Advanced Camera & Media Player Settings

### Photo/Video Camera
- **Start Here**
- **Camera**
- (For Video Camera, then press ▼)

#### Changing save location
- **Settings**
- **Save Pictures to or Save Videos to**
- **Select location or Ask Each Time**
- **Ask Each Time is available for video recording when Record Time/Size is set to For Message**

#### Activating automatic saving
- **Settings**
- **Auto Save**
- **On**

#### Selecting image quality
- **Picture Quality** or **Video Quality**
- **Select quality**

### Photo Camera
- **Start Here**
- **Camera**

#### Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions
- **Settings**
- **White Balance**
- **Select mode**

#### Changing shutter click sound
- **Settings**
- **Shutter Sound**
- **Select pattern**
- Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are unique and fixed.

#### Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches
- **Settings**
- **Remote Shutter Set.**
- **Off**
- Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.

### Video Camera
- **Start Here**
- **Camera**

#### Recording video without sound
- **Microphone**
- **Off**

#### Enlarging Viewfinder size
- **Display Size**
- **Enlarge**

### Media Playback
- **Start Here**
- **Media Player**

#### Deleting all WMA files
- **Delete All WMA**
- **Enter Handset Code**
- **Yes**

#### Switching audio output to wireless device
- **Sound Output**
- **Bluetooth Device**
## Advanced S! Application Settings

### Operational Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting S! Application sound volume</td>
<td>Application Volume, Adjust level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling surround effect</td>
<td>Surround, Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing incoming transmission notice</td>
<td>Calls &amp; Alarms, Select item, Show Call Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pausing S! Application for incoming mail</td>
<td>Calls &amp; Alarms, Incoming Message, Message Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting handset to show notice at Alarm Time</td>
<td>Calls &amp; Alarms, Alarm, Alarm Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showing incoming S! Appli Request notice</td>
<td>Calls &amp; Alarms, Start Demand, Start Notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Screensaver Activation Time</td>
<td>Screensaver, Enter Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When an S! Application started from Screensaver is active, a message appears for incoming transmissions regardless of settings.

### Reset Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restoring default S! Application settings</td>
<td>Set to Default, Enter Handset Code, Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoring default S! Appli Library</td>
<td>Memory All Clear, Enter Handset Code, Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.
- Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact S! FeliCa service providers for details.)
- Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.
### Advanced Handy Extras Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alarm</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounding Alarm Time</td>
<td>If you prefer to hear the alarm tone even in Manner mode, select &quot;Yes.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating Alarm</td>
<td>Depending on World Clock time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wakeup TV</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounding Wakeup Time</td>
<td>For Manner Mode: select &quot;Yes.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating Wakeup</td>
<td>Choose &quot;On.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hour Minder</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounding Hour Minder</td>
<td>For Manner Mode: select &quot;Yes.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activating Hour Minder</td>
<td>Choose &quot;On.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S! Cast</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiding Weather Indicator</td>
<td>Select &quot;Off.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canceling Weather</td>
<td>Select &quot;Off.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S! FeliCa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoring default S!</td>
<td>If you want to reset all S! FeliCa settings, select &quot;Set to Default.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC Card Settings</td>
<td>Settings in IC Card Lock, Remote Lock, Interface Settings and Balance Info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Settings in IC Card Lock, Remote Lock, Interface Settings and Balance Info return to their defaults. (Downloaded Lifestyle-Applications remain.)*
### Advanced Communication Service Settings

**S! Friend’s Status & S! Circle Talk**

- **Start Here**
- **Settings**
- **Phone Settings**
- **Locks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disabling S! Friend’s Status &amp; S! Circle Talk</td>
<td><strong>IP Service Setting</strong> Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enter Handset Code</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**S! Friend’s Status**

- **Start Here**
- **Communication**
- **S! Friend’s Status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Receiving request from unsaved numbers</strong></td>
<td><strong>Settings</strong> Confirm if Registered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Request Reply</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rejecting request from unsaved numbers</strong></td>
<td>Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Always Ignore</strong></td>
<td>Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**S! Circle Talk**

- **Start Here**
- **Loudspeaker**
- **Off**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Canceling Loudspeaker</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth®

- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset
- Disabling Bluetooth® watch response to incoming mail, etc.

My Device Settings

- Visibility
- Hide My Phone
- Bluetooth Timeout
- Select time

Setting Watch

- Set BT-Watch Time
- Yes

PC Connection

- Disable

Network

- Retrieve NW Info
- Yes
- Datum On/Off
- Off
- Enter Handset Code

Location Info

- Location Property
- Select option
- Enter Handset Code

Connecting Bluetooth® watch with handset beforehand.

- Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.

- Settings are available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.

- Prohibit

- Select item

- Yes

- Off

- Enter

- Select option

- Location Property

- Yes

- Off

- Enter Handset Code
# Reset Settings

**Restoring Default Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restoring default handset settings</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset Settings</strong></td>
<td>Enter Handset Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Some default settings may not be restored.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset All</strong></td>
<td>Enter Handset Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appl; contact S! FeliCa service providers for details.)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Handset Code returns to the default setting.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card; both are 9999 by default.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIN1</td>
<td>Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN2</td>
<td>Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock

Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps.

Enter PUK Code  ➔ Enter new PIN  ➔ Re-enter new PIN  ➔ Write down PUK code.

USIM Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card, disabling handset. To learn how to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38).
USIM Card Installation

Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.

**Inserting**

1. Remove battery (P.14-4)
2. Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down

**Removing**

1. Remove battery (P.14-4)
2. Gently slide out USIM Card as shown

- Reinstall battery (P.14-4).

**After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement**

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.
Battery Installation

About Battery
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery
- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.
- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

Inserting/Removing Battery

1. **Remove cover**
   - Battery Cover

2. **Insert battery**
   - With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

3. **Close cover**
   - Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing
- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.

Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.
Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), turn power off to end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1. Settings ➤ Phone Settings
2. Software Update ➤
3. Software Update ➤

Confirmation
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result
- While Information window appears, Update Result ➤
- When Information window is hidden, follow these steps.
- In ➤, Update Result ➤

Reboot Failure
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.14-38).
# Troubleshooting

## General

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handset won't turn on</td>
<td>Was not pressed long enough?</td>
<td>Press longer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handset won't respond</td>
<td>Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</td>
<td>Charge battery or install a charged battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad won't respond</td>
<td>Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On?</td>
<td>If On, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen prompt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby</td>
<td>Keypad Lock may be active (appears).</td>
<td>Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert USIM Card appears</td>
<td>The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.</td>
<td>Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.</td>
<td>Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Problem-Specific Solutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging</td>
<td>Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.</td>
<td>Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset</td>
<td>Entry/folder may be set to Secret.</td>
<td>Activate Show Secret Data (P.11-3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handset feels warm</td>
<td>Handset may warm while charging.</td>
<td>Unless handset becomes very hot to the touch, these should be considered normal. Regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot access Memory Card files</td>
<td>Memory Card may not be properly formatted.</td>
<td>Use 920SH-formatted Memory Cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Bluetooth®/Infrared is On</td>
<td>Handset may not be in Standby.</td>
<td>Return to Standby and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keypad Lock/Password Lock may be active.</td>
<td>Cancel Keypad Lock/Password Lock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Software Update may be in progress.</td>
<td>Wait until update is complete.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting

#### Charger/Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery charges quickly</strong></td>
<td>Remaining charge shortens charging time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery charges slowly</strong></td>
<td>Battery may be charging via USB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charging slow during Video Calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery won’t charge</strong></td>
<td>AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Battery may not be properly installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Handset, External Device Port, battery or AC Charger connector terminals may need to be cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charger may not be supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: This is normal.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)</td>
<td>Replace battery with a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery may be charging via USB.</td>
<td>Use AC Charger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging slow during Video Calls.</td>
<td>End the call to charge faster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.</td>
<td>Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.</td>
<td>Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery may not be properly installed.</td>
<td>Install battery properly and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handset, External Device Port, battery or AC Charger connector terminals may need to be cleaned.</td>
<td>Clean terminals with a cotton swab and try again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charger may not be supported.</td>
<td>Use specified AC Charger only; others may damage battery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Battery Time seems shorter than usual

- **Possible Cause**: High power consuming operations are in use.
- **Solution**: Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, SI Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.

- **Possible Cause**: Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.
- **Solution**: Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.

- **Possible Cause**: Power hungry settings may be active.
- **Solution**: Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time, etc.

#### Calling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cannot place call</strong></td>
<td>Keypad Lock may be active (appears).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Password Lock may be active ($ appears).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancel Password Lock (P.11-2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Call won’t connect and there’s a beeping tone</strong></td>
<td>Did you include the area code or the first 0?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Handset may be out-of-range (appears).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offline Mode may be active (appears).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dial the number including the area code or 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancel Offline Mode (P.1-12) and retry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: This is normal.*
### Troubleshooting

#### Calling (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call is choppy or cut off</td>
<td>Network signal may be weak.</td>
<td>Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clicking noise is heard during call</td>
<td>Handset may be moving into another service area.</td>
<td>Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot hear other party's voice</td>
<td>Earpiece Volume may be low.</td>
<td>Increase Earpiece Volume (P.3-10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice</td>
<td>Memory may be full.</td>
<td>Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages (P.3-3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding</td>
<td>Does the number start with 1, 00, 0120 or 0990?</td>
<td>Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Messaging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cannot receive messages</td>
<td>Does 📬 appear?</td>
<td>Memory is full. Delete messages (P.4-17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🇺🇸 Mail is not delivered as sent</td>
<td>Recipient handset may not be 🇺🇸 Mail-compatible.</td>
<td>Recipient must be subscribed to 🇺🇸 Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Still images are not delivered as sent</td>
<td>Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible.</td>
<td>Convert JPEG files to PNG (P.7-13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video clips are not delivered as sent</td>
<td>Recipient handset may not support the file format.</td>
<td>Send video clips to 🇺🇸 Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Other Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TV, mobile camera, etc. won't activate</td>
<td>Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</td>
<td>Charge battery or install a charged battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot watch TV</td>
<td>Network Information may need to be retrieved.</td>
<td>Retrieve Network Information (P.13-17).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot use S! FeliCa</td>
<td>Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</td>
<td>Charge battery or install a charged battery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Key Assignments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>あいうえお あいうえお</td>
<td>アイウエオ アイウエオ</td>
<td>@ / 1 (space)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>かきくけこ</td>
<td>カキケコ</td>
<td>ABCabc2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>さしすせそ</td>
<td>サシスセソ</td>
<td>DEFdef3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>たちつとっ</td>
<td>タチツトッ</td>
<td>GHgh14</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>なにぬねの</td>
<td>ナニネノ</td>
<td>JKjk15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>びぶへほ</td>
<td>ビブヘホ</td>
<td>MNmno6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>まみめも</td>
<td>マミメモ</td>
<td>PQRsors7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>やゆよゆう</td>
<td>ヤユヨユう</td>
<td>TUVtuv8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>らるるれろ</td>
<td>ラルルレロ</td>
<td>WXYZwxyz9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>のおん</td>
<td>ノオン</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Log, Pictogram List, Symbol List
2 Log, Pictogram List, Symbol List
3 Log, Pictogram List, Symbol List

1 - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.
2 Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.
3 * +, P (pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.
### Key Assignments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Conversion (up)³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Conversion (down)²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Cursor left</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Cursor right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Change entry mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>Toggle case (for some characters)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Toggle case + Toggle mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Delete one character,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancel conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Long)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>Re-convert³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>Recover up to 64 deleted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>characters⁷</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Recover up to 64 deleted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>characters⁷</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>Phonetic Conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>Hiragana to Katakana/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alphanumeric Conversion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

³Cursor moves up except during conversion.
⁴Cursor moves down except during conversion.
⁵Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)
⁶Press once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using (Long).)
## Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press **Q** to switch immediately after character entry.

### Double-byte Upper Case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Digit (Press First)</th>
<th>Second Digit (Press Next)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a b c d e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>f g h i j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>k l m n o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>p q r s t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>u v w x y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Single-byte Upper Case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Digit (Press First)</th>
<th>Second Digit (Press Next)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A B C D E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>F G H I J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>K L M N O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>P Q R S T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>U V W X Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Double-byte Lower Case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Digit (Press First)</th>
<th>Second Digit (Press Next)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a b c d e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>f g h i j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>k l m n o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>p q r s t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>u v w x y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Single-byte Lower Case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Digit (Press First)</th>
<th>Second Digit (Press Next)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a b c d e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>f g h i j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>k l m n o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>p q r s t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>u v w x y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Press **7** to insert breaks (in mail message text, Notepad, etc.).
2. Press **8** to toggle between upper and lower case modes.
## Character Code List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character Code</th>
<th>First Three Digits</th>
<th>Last Digit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>013</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>014</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>015</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>016</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>017</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>018</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>019</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>023</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>024</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>025</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>026</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>027</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>027</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>028</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>029</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>030</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>031</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>032</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>032</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>033</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>034</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>035</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>036</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>037</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>038</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>039</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>040</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>041</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>042</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>043</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>044</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>045</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>045</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</td>
<td>046</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The table continues with more entries.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Three Digits</th>
<th>Last Digit</th>
<th>First Three Digits</th>
<th>Last Digit</th>
<th>First Three Digits</th>
<th>Last Digit</th>
<th>First Three Digits</th>
<th>Last Digit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>224</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>236</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Character Codes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character Codes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>͘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>͚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>͜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>͞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>͠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>͢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ͤ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ͦ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ͨ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ͪ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Three Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Three Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>499</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character Codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Three Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>834</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Specifications

**SoftBank 920SH**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continuous Talk Time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continuous Standby Time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continuous Video Call Talk Time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charging Time (power off)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dimensions (W x H x D)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum Output</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in closed position without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

#### Handset Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parts</th>
<th>Materials &amp; Finishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Housing (Display side)</td>
<td>Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing (Display back side, Speaker area, Keypad side, battery side), battery cover</td>
<td>ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing (Display back outmost side)</td>
<td>Aluminum alloy/Anodized aluminum paint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display window</td>
<td>Tempered glass with protective film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screw cover (Earpiece area), External Display window, lens cover, Mobile Light cover</td>
<td>Acrylic resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Light</td>
<td>ABS resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back ornament sheet</td>
<td>PET sheet/Acrylic UV curing painting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared Port</td>
<td>ABS resin (infrared grade)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antenna</td>
<td>ABS resin/Brass/PA/Elastomer/SUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protector (Display edges)</td>
<td>Nylon resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display rotation stopper (stop pad)</td>
<td>Urethane resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi Selector</td>
<td>SUS/Spinning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting, deposition) for Metallic Black and Metallic Gold housings (Display back side, Speaker area).

#### Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parts</th>
<th>Materials &amp; Finishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts &amp; A/a Key, Clear/Black Key, TV/Text Key, Multi Job/Manner Key, Keypad</td>
<td>PC resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Keys</td>
<td>PC resin/UV painting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tip cover (Keypad)</td>
<td>PET sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Card Slot Cover, Headphone Port Cover, External Device Port Cover</td>
<td>Elastomeric resin, PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charger Terminal</td>
<td>SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screw (all pieces)</td>
<td>SWCH16A/Ni plating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USIM pin</td>
<td>Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Accessories

**Battery**

- **Voltage**: 3.7V
- **Battery Type**: Lithium-ion
- **Capacity**: 820 mAh
- **Dimensions (W x H x D)**: Approximately 55 x 85 x 4 mm (without protruding parts)

**Headphones (with Microphone) (Black)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parts</th>
<th>Materials &amp; Finishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Approximately 16 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord Length</td>
<td>Approximately 1.85 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Q Handset Materials**

*ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting, deposition) for Metallic Black and Metallic Gold housings (Display back side, Speaker area).
### Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Download</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC Site Browser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **History** | 300 pages |
| **Bookmarks/Saved Pages** | 10 URLs |
| **Tab** | 10 URLs |

| **S! Quick News List** | News Flash: 1 item, General: 4 items |
| **S! Loop List** | 5 items |

### Digital TV

| **Recorded File** | ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard) |
| **Recording Time (Example)** | 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card |
| **Marker** | 99 Markers (10 per file) |

| **Split File** | 99 portions per file |
| **Recording** | 30 minutes |

| **Reservation List** | 5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card) |

### Basic Operations

| **Wallpaper/Standby Window** |
| 3 tags (100 characters each) |

| **Text Entry** |
| 160 entries (5 per reading) |
| Word: 15 characters |
| Reading: 8 hiragana |

| **Phone Book** |
| 750 entries |
| Last/First: 32 characters each |

| **Data Folder** |
| 50 MB |

| **Calling** |
| Dialed Numbers | 30 records |
| Received Calls | 30 records |
| Answer Phone/Caller Voice | 20 messages or 90 seconds |
| Auto Answer List | 10 numbers |

### Messaging

| **Received Msg** | 5 MB or 1,000 messages |
| **Sent Messages** | 1 MB (or 500 messages or Sent Messages) |

| **Template** | 90 MB |

| **S! Mail Subject** | 512 single-byte characters |
| **S! Mail Message** | Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters |

| **Auto Resend** | 2 times |
| **Send Reservation** | 10 messages |

| **Speed Dial List** | 10 numbers/addresses |
| **Signatures** | 256 single-byte characters |

| **Recipient** | 20 numbers/addresses |

| **Folder** | 20 folders (20 Auto Sort Keys each) |

| **Chat Folder** |
| Memory | 300 messages per folder |
| Folder | 10 folders (20 members each) |

| **Arrange Mail** |
| 1 sound or Flash file, or 40 images/My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash file) |

| **3D Pictogram** | 150 characters |
### Specifications

**Camera & Imaging**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mobile Camera</th>
<th>Photo Camera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective Pixels</strong></td>
<td>3.2 Megapixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto Shut-off Time</strong></td>
<td>Approximately 3 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zoom</th>
<th>1x - 26x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>1036 x 2048 (QXGA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full HD</td>
<td>1280 x 1024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2M</td>
<td>960 x 1280 (Quad-VGA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>640 x 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td>640 x 854 (Full VGA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper (H)</td>
<td>854 x 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wide L</td>
<td>1200 x 640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail L</td>
<td>320 x 240 (QVGA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail S</td>
<td>120 x 160 (QVGA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scanner</th>
<th>Image Size (W x H dots)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Free</td>
<td>1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File Format</th>
<th>JPEG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>Approximately 640 files with default settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>imImageXXX.png (XXX: 3 digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Distance</td>
<td>Macro: 10 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Video Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zoom</th>
<th>1x - 12x (Sub-QCIF)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SD VIDEO</td>
<td>640 x 480 (VGA) 320 x 240 (QVGA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 x 240 (Wide) 240 x 176 (QVGA) 176 x 144 (QCIF)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Record Size (W x H dots)</th>
<th>For Shots</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SD VIDEO</td>
<td>Extended Video 30 minutes on Memory Card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For Message</td>
<td>295 KB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>MOLXXX.ASF, videoXXX.3gp (XXX: 3 digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Distance</td>
<td>1.5 m in good light</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Editing Images

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zoom</th>
<th>W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SD VIDEO</td>
<td>Power On/Off (480 x 854) Alarm (480 x 208)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retouch</td>
<td>JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 120 x 160 dots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paste</td>
<td>16 characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stamp</td>
<td>Face Arrange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Media Player & S! Applications

**Supported Formats**

- WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (Secure SD-Audio standard)
- (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Media Player</th>
<th>Remote Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supported Formats</td>
<td>50 MB* or 100 items*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encoding</td>
<td>*Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Video</td>
<td>Approximate 5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>MOLXXX.ASF, videoXXX.3gp (XXX: 3 digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Distance</td>
<td>1.5 m in good light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Format</td>
<td>3GP/ASF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Time per Shot</td>
<td>SD VIDEO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
<td>Extended Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>30 minutes on Memory Card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>295 KB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>MOLXXX.ASF, videoXXX.3gp (XXX: 3 digits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Distance</td>
<td>1.5 m in good light</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### S! Applications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S! Applications</th>
<th>Remote Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handset Memory</td>
<td>Approximately 5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>50 MB* or 100 items*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library</td>
<td>Approximate 5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control</td>
<td>50 MB* or 100 items*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>*Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control</td>
<td>Approximately 5 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifications

■ Infrared
- Transfer
  - Range: Within 20 cm
- IrSS Transfer
  - Receive 2 MB or smaller JPEG images

■ Bluetooth®
- Communication System
  - Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0
- Supported Profiles
  - Headset Profile
  - Hands-Free Profile
  - Dial-up Networking Profile
  - Object Push Profile
  - File Transfer Profile
  - Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
  - Basic Imaging Profile
  - Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
- Output
  - Bluetooth® Power Class 2
- Range
  - Within 10 m
  - Device Search
  - 16 devices
- Pairing
  - 32 devices
- Device Name
  - 16 characters
- Printing
  - JPEG/PNG images

■ Memory Card
- Backup File Name
  - yymmddXX (XX: 2 digits/alphabets)

■ Communication Services
- ■ Friend’s Status
  - Member: 30 members
  - My Status: Comment: 18 characters
- ■ Circle Talk
  - Participant: 11 members
  - Speak Time: 30 seconds each
  - Member List: 10 members per Group

■ Connectivity & File Backup
- ■ Infrared
  - Transfer
  - Range: Within 20 cm
- IrSS Transfer
  - Receive 2 MB or smaller JPEG images
- ■ Bluetooth®
  - Communication System
  - Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0
  - Supported Profiles
  - Headset Profile
  - Hands-Free Profile
  - Dial-up Networking Profile
  - Object Push Profile
  - File Transfer Profile
  - Basic Imaging Profile
  - Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
  - Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
- Output
  - Bluetooth® Power Class 2
  - Range
  - Within 10 m
- Device Search
  - 16 devices
- Pairing
  - 32 devices
- Device Name
  - 16 characters
- Printing
  - JPEG/PNG images

■ Addressbook Back-up
- Log
  - 10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records
- Auto Synch
  - 4:00 AM every Sunday

■ Network Settings
- Add Network
  - Country: Network code: 3 digits
  - Name: 25 single-byte characters

■ Reference URLs
  - SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - microSD™ Memory Card
  - Compatibility
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/
  - Addressbook Back-up
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - SVG-T
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html (Japanese)
  - Custom Screens
  - http://www.customio.com/ (Japanese)
  - Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/eng/
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/

■ Handy Extras
  - Calendar* Tasks
    - Description: 128 characters
    - Location: 16 characters
  - Set Holiday: 10 holidays
  - Notepad
    - 60 entries (1,036 characters each)
  - Expenses Memo
    - 30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
  - Voice Recorder
    - Message time: 3 minutes per file
    - Extended: 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
  - Alarms
    - 5 entries, Subject: 7 characters
  - Wakeup TV
  - Auto Shut-off
    - Approximately 30 minutes
  - World Clock
    - City name: 16 characters
  - *Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of July 2007.
  - Calculator
  - 299,999,999,999
  - Notepad
    - 60 entries (1,536 characters each)
  - Expenses Memo
    - 30 entries (100,000 yen each)
  - Expenses Memo
    - 30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
  - Voice Recorder
    - Message time: 3 minutes per file
    - Extended: 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
  - Alarms
    - 5 entries, Subject: 7 characters
  - Wakeup TV
  - Auto Shut-off
    - Approximately 30 minutes
  - World Clock
    - City name: 16 characters
  - **Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of July 2007.

■ Scan Barcode
  - Continuous Mode
  - UPC/EAN: 50 codes
  - QR Code: 16 codes
  - MicroSD™ Memory Card
  - Compatibility
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/
  - Addressbook Back-up
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - SVG-T
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html (Japanese)
  - Custom Screens
  - http://www.customio.com/ (Japanese)
  - Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/eng/
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/

■ Log
  - 10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records
  - Auto Synch
  - 4:00 AM every Sunday

■ Network Settings
- Add Network
  - Country: Network code: 3 digits
  - Name: 25 single-byte characters

■ Reference URLs
  - SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - microSD™ Memory Card
  - Compatibility
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/
  - Addressbook Back-up
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - SVG-T
  - http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html (Japanese)
  - Custom Screens
  - http://www.customio.com/ (Japanese)
  - Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  - From SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/eng/
  - From Handset (Japanese)
  - http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/
## Memory Card Structure & Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Card Structure</th>
<th>Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCIM XXXSHARP</td>
<td>Still images in DCIM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Contents</td>
<td>SD Local Contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail</td>
<td>Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book</td>
<td>e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookmarks</td>
<td>Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Screens</td>
<td>Custom Screens in Data Folder (Custom Screens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash(R)</td>
<td>Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash(R) Ringtones</td>
<td>Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Games and More</td>
<td>SI Applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Templates</td>
<td>Arrange Mail templates in Templates folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Music files in Data Folder (Music)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Documents</td>
<td>Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictograms</td>
<td>GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pictures</td>
<td>Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounds &amp; Ringtones</td>
<td>Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videos</td>
<td>Video files in Data Folder (Videos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Space</td>
<td>SI Town files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMAudio</td>
<td>WMA files for Media Player (WMA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH_Folder</td>
<td>Application management files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utility</td>
<td>Backup files (Phone Book), etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHARP MOBILE</td>
<td>Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD_AUDIO</td>
<td>SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD_VIDEO PRL001</td>
<td>ASF video files saved to SD VIDEO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Menu List

#### Communication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>El Town</td>
<td>P.2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Loop</td>
<td>P.5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Friend’s Status</td>
<td>P.10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Circle Talk</td>
<td>P.10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near chat</td>
<td>P.10-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Yahoo! Keitai

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yahoo! Keitai</td>
<td>P.5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookmarks</td>
<td>P.5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saved Pages</td>
<td>P.5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter URL</td>
<td>P.5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>P.5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC Site Browser</td>
<td>P.5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Settings</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PC Site Browser

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Homepage</td>
<td>P.5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookmarks</td>
<td>P.5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saved Pages</td>
<td>P.5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter URL</td>
<td>P.5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>P.5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahoo! Keitai</td>
<td>P.5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC Site Browser</td>
<td>Warning Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zoom Factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zoom Area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Common Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Font Size</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll Settings</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cursor Settings</td>
<td>P.5-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloads</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Images</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounds</td>
<td>P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Operations</td>
<td>Delete Cache P.13-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete Cookies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete Auth Info</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Security Settings

- Send Referer
- Cookies
- Script Settings
- Secure Prompt
- Root Certificates
- Keep Auth Info
- Flash® Restriction
- Download to
- Initialized Browser P.13-10
- Reset Settings P.13-10

#### Media Player

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>P.8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videos</td>
<td>P.8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streaming</td>
<td>P.5-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sound Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete All WMA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Music

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last Played Music</td>
<td>P.8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Music</td>
<td>P.8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD AUDIO</td>
<td>P.8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMA</td>
<td>P.8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download Music</td>
<td>P.8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music Search</td>
<td>P.8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>Sound Effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Playback Pattern</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Videos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last Played Video</td>
<td>P.8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Videos</td>
<td>P.8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download Videos</td>
<td>P.8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD VIDEO</td>
<td>P.8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>Playback Pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Backlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Display Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sound Effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web Link Setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Menus

#### Messaging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Received Msg.</td>
<td>P.4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Message</td>
<td>P.4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieve New Msg.</td>
<td>P.4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drafts</td>
<td>P.4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Templates</td>
<td>P.4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent Messages</td>
<td>P.4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UnsEnt Messages</td>
<td>P.4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chat Folder</td>
<td>P.4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Mail Box</td>
<td>Mail List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address Settings</td>
<td>P.8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Settings</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMS Mail Settings</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMS Settings</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Mail List</td>
<td>P.8-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Settings: General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sending Status</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delivery Report</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti Spam Measures</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Reply Set.</td>
<td>P.8-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature Settings</td>
<td>P.8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Delete</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Msg.</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent Messages</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Resend</td>
<td>P.8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link to Feeling</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Settings: SMS Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message DL (Japan)</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message DL (Abroad)</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reply to Settings</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture Appearance</td>
<td>P.13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Play File</td>
<td>Pictures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send File Settings</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Settings: S! Mail Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Message DL</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message List View</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Msg. View</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent Msg. View</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll Unit</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Messaging: General Settings: Link to Feeling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Idle Screen Info.</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch On/Off</td>
<td>P.13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>Light Colour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Camera

#### Photo Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Settings</td>
<td>Exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Setting</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Frame</td>
<td>P.7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous Shoot</td>
<td>P.7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Effects</td>
<td>P.7-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panorama/Scanner</td>
<td>P.7-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barcode/Scan</td>
<td>P.7-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Folder</td>
<td>P.7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture Size</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scene</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture Quality</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-timer</td>
<td>P.7-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Indicators</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sound</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Pictures to:</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Save</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panorama Settings</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Shutter Set.</td>
<td>P.7-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Help

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Light</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Appendix

- **14-24**
### Video Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record Settings</td>
<td>Exposure P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Size</td>
<td>Focus Setting P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Folder</td>
<td>P.7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record Time/Size</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microphone</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Quality</td>
<td>P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-timer</td>
<td>P.7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>Save Videos to Auto Save Video Encode P.13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help</td>
<td>P.7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Light</td>
<td>P.7-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Data Folder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pictures</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCIM</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Pictograms</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ring Songs-Tones</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Appli</td>
<td>P.8-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videos</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle-Appli</td>
<td>P.9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Custom Screens</td>
<td>P.2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Flash&quot;</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Flash&quot; Ringtones</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Documents</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Status</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### S! Appli

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S! Appli</td>
<td>P.8-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osaifu-Keitai</td>
<td>P.9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Settings

### TV Alarm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm Time</td>
<td>P.13-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Broadcast Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notify Connection</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacture Number</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Station Data</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Digital TV</td>
<td>P.6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Player</td>
<td>P.6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Link</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Listing</td>
<td>P.6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reservation List</td>
<td>P.6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.13-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Menus**

### Entertainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S! Quick News</td>
<td>P.5-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! CAST/Weather Icon</td>
<td>P.9-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Latest Contents</td>
<td>P.9-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather Icon</td>
<td>P.9-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BookSurfing</td>
<td>P.9-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-Book Viewer</td>
<td>P.9-25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Tools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tools 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>P.9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarms</td>
<td>P.9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasks</td>
<td>P.9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculator</td>
<td>P.9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expenses Memo</td>
<td>Add New Expense P.9-9 Totals P.9-9 Edit Category P.9-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osaifu-Keitai</td>
<td>P.9-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Tools 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lifestyle-Appli</td>
<td>P.3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC Card Status</td>
<td>P.3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC Card Lock</td>
<td>P.3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Lock</td>
<td>P.3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance Info</td>
<td>P.3-32 Set to Default P.13-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopwatch</td>
<td>P.3-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countdown Timer</td>
<td>P.3-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Clock</td>
<td>P.3-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hour Minder</td>
<td>P.3-19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Tools 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Document Viewer</td>
<td>P.9-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notepad</td>
<td>P.9-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S! Addressbook Backup</td>
<td>P.12-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph.Book Settings</td>
<td>Sort Entries P.5-18 Select Phone Book P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Entries</td>
<td>Copy All -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Help</td>
<td>Scanned Results P.3-36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Refer to

- S! Quick News P.5-8
- S! Quick News List P.5-8
- S! Loop List P.5-12
- Automatic Update P.5-12
- Standby settings
- Reset S! Quick News
- P.9-35
- P.9-23
- P.13-15
- P.9-24
- P.9-8
- P.3-11
- P.3-12
- P.3-12
- P.9-15
- P.9-3
- P.9-17
- P.9-14
- P.9-23
- P.9-25
- P.9-25
- P.9-9
- P.9-9
- P.9-9
- P.9-9
- P.9-22
- P.9-20
- P.9-19
- P.3-32
- P.13-15
### Phone Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode Settings</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Screens</td>
<td>P.2-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sounds &amp; Alerts</td>
<td>P.2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date &amp; Time</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Language)</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Dictionary</td>
<td>P.2-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Entry</td>
<td>P.2-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saved Word List</td>
<td>P.2-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquire Dictionary</td>
<td>P.2-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Rotation</td>
<td>P.1-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate 90° to</td>
<td>P.1-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate Back to</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringer Output</td>
<td>P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earpiece Volume</td>
<td>P.3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Menu</td>
<td>P.2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locks</td>
<td>P.11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Update</td>
<td>P.14-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Update</td>
<td>P.14-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master Reset</td>
<td>P.13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Settings</td>
<td>P.13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset All</td>
<td>P.13-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone Settings: Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td>P.2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Graphics</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font Settings</td>
<td>P.2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font Size</td>
<td>P.2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font Weight</td>
<td>P.2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Display</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock/Calendar</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Window</td>
<td>P.2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Indicators</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Operator Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivid Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greeting Message</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Display</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Date/Time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock Type</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caller Display</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Saving</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial Number</td>
<td>P.13-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone Settings: Sounds & Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringtone/videos</td>
<td>P.2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Sounds</td>
<td>P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration</td>
<td>P.2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Light</td>
<td>P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status Light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any Key Answer</td>
<td>P.13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone Settings: Date & Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set Date/Time</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Correction</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daylight Saving</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Time Zone</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock/Calendar</td>
<td>P.13-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Clock</td>
<td>P.9-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarms</td>
<td>P.9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Holiday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Format</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Format</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar Format</td>
<td>P.13-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone Settings: Locks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIN Entry</td>
<td>P.11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change PIN2</td>
<td>P.11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Lock</td>
<td>P.11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Service Setting</td>
<td>P.13-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Book Lock</td>
<td>P.11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History Lock</td>
<td>P.11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Secret Data</td>
<td>P.11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chng Handset Code</td>
<td>P.1-13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix

### Connectivity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>P.12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared</td>
<td>P.12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send All</td>
<td>P.12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Storage</td>
<td>P.12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Card</td>
<td>P.2-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity: Bluetooth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Refer to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch On/Off</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for Devices</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paired Devices</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send All</td>
<td>P.12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Watch</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Device Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Name</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visibility</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound Output</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handsfree Setting</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Applt Request</td>
<td>P.10-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth Timeout</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Device Details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity: Memory Card</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Refer to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup/Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encode</td>
<td>P.12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Copies</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.7-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Settings</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Call/Video Call

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SD Local Contents</td>
<td>P.2-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format Card</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Status</td>
<td>P.2-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Timers</td>
<td>P.3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Counter</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Costs</td>
<td>P.3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer Time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing Message</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voicemail/Divert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voicemail</td>
<td>P.3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diverts</td>
<td>P.3-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>P.3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Picture</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming Picture</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing Picture</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold Guidance Pic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backlight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loudspeaker</td>
<td>P.3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute Microphone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Monitor</td>
<td>P.3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show My Number</td>
<td>P.3-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missed Calls</td>
<td>P.3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intl Prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Codes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Add Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disp. Timer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disp. Call Cost</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Time Counter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Call Barring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outgoing Calls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incoming Calls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rejected Numbers</td>
<td>P.3-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change NW Password</td>
<td>P.3-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minute Minder</td>
<td>P.13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Answer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer Time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Waiting</td>
<td>P.3-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Network Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Network</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offline Mode</td>
<td>P.1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieve NW Info</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location Info</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location Mode</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Info</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Refer to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Backup/Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encode</td>
<td>P.12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Copies</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.7-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Settings</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Menus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity</td>
<td>P.12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared</td>
<td>P.12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send All</td>
<td>P.12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Storage</td>
<td>P.12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Card</td>
<td>P.2-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for Devices</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paired Devices</td>
<td>P.12-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send All</td>
<td>P.12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Watch</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Name</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visibility</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound Output</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handsfree Setting</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S! Applt Request</td>
<td>P.10-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth Timeout</td>
<td>P.13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup/Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore</td>
<td>P.12-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encode</td>
<td>P.12-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Copies</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>P.7-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Settings</td>
<td>P.7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix 14-31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>History Lock</strong> ..............................................11-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> ..........................................................3-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hour Minder</strong> ..............................................9-19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assign Tone/Video</strong> ..................................9-34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>For Manner Mode</strong> ..................................13-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Link to World Clk</strong> ..................................13-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vibration</strong>..................................................9-34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IC Card</strong>.......................................................9-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IC Card Lock</strong> ...........................................9-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote Lock</strong> ...........................................9-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicators</strong> ....................................................1-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Camera (Viewfinder)</strong> ...................... 7-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External Display</strong> ..................................1-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Messaging (message list)</strong> ................... 4-11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Music Playback Window</strong> .................... 8-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Playback Window</strong> .......... 8-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information Window</strong> ................................1-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infrared</strong> .....................................................12-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Receiving files</strong> ................................12-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sending files</strong> ................................12-4, 12-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infrared Port</strong> ...........................................1-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal Antenna</strong> ................................1-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>International calls</strong> ................................3-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>International calls (placing)</strong> .............3-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internet</strong> .....................................................5-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accessing</strong> ...........................................5-3, 5-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Basic Operations</strong> ................................5-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common Settings</strong> ................................13-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deleting History</strong> ................................13-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Handling Information</strong> .........................13-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saving pages/Bookmarks</strong> .......... 5-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Switch Browser</strong> ..................................5-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>URL Entry Log</strong> ..................................5-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>InfI Call</strong>................................................... 3-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP Service Setting</strong> ................................13-16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IrSS Transfer</strong> ...................................7-12, 12-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Key Assignments</strong> ..................................14-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keypad Lock</strong>................................................1-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language</strong> .....................................................13-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Large Font Menu</strong> ...................................2-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light Sensor</strong> ...........................................1-2, 13-3, 13-11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Link to Feeling</strong> ...................................13-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Link to World Clk</strong> ................................13-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location Info</strong> ...........................................13-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Datum On/Off</strong> ........................................13-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location Property</strong> ................................13-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Locks</strong> ...................................................1-13, 11-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loudspeaker</strong> ...........................................3-11, 13-16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mail Groups</strong> ...........................................2-19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Changing members</strong> ................................2-28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deleting</strong> ...................................................2-28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit Name</strong> ...........................................2-28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main Menu</strong> ...................................................2-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manner mode</strong> ...........................................1-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mass Storage</strong> ...........................................12-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Master Reset</strong> ...........................................13-18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Format Card</strong> ...........................................2-24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset All</strong> ...........................................13-18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset Settings</strong> ................................13-18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Media Player</strong> ...........................................8-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delete All WMA</strong> ..................................13-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Playlists</strong> ...........................................8-8, 8-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sound Output</strong> ...........................................13-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory All Clear (SI Applications)</strong> ........13-14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory Card</strong> ...........................................2-23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Format Card</strong> ...........................................2-24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Opening files</strong> ...........................................2-24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory Card Slot</strong> ................................1-2, 2-23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory Card Structure &amp; Contents</strong> ........14-22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| <strong>Menu List</strong> ...........................................14-23  |
| <strong>Camera</strong> .............................................14-24  |
| <strong>Communication</strong> ..................................14-23  |
| <strong>Data Folder</strong> ......................................14-25  |
| <strong>Entertainment</strong> ..................................14-26  |
| <strong>Media Player</strong> ..................................14-23  |
| <strong>Messaging</strong> .........................................14-24  |
| <strong>Phone</strong> .............................................14-26  |
| <strong>SI Appli.</strong> ...........................................14-25  |
| <strong>Settings</strong> ...........................................14-27  |
| <strong>Tools</strong> .............................................14-26  |
| <strong>TV</strong> ................................................14-25  |
| <strong>Yahoo! Keitai</strong> ....................................14-23  |
| <strong>Menu Operations</strong> ....................................2-2  |
| <strong>Message List View</strong> ................................13-8  |
| <strong>Message Notice</strong> ................................13-8  |
| <strong>Messages (creating/sending)</strong> ...........4-4, 4-7  |
| <strong>3D Pictogram</strong> ......................................4-8  |
| <strong>Date &amp; Time</strong> ......................................4-8  |
| <strong>Drafts</strong> .............................................4-17  |
| <strong>Edit &amp; Send</strong> ......................................4-17  |
| <strong>Editing/resending</strong> .........................4-17  |
| <strong>Messaging Settings</strong> .........................4-9  |
| <strong>Pict Setting</strong> ......................................4-9  |
| <strong>Preview Message</strong> ................................4-8  |
| <strong>Recipients (adding)</strong> .........................4-8  |
| <strong>Recipients (selecting/entering)</strong> ..........4-8  |
| <strong>Save to Drafts</strong> ................................4-8  |
| <strong>Set Auto Play File</strong> ..............................4-9  |
| <strong>Set Sent Cancel</strong> ................................4-8  |
| <strong>Signature Settings</strong> .........................4-8  |
| <strong>Speed Mail List</strong> ................................4-8  |
| <strong>Templates</strong> ..........................................4-9  |
| <strong>Within the Network</strong> ..............................4-8  |
| <strong>Messages (deleting)</strong> .........................4-17  |
| <strong>Messages (forwarding)</strong> ......................4-17  |
| <strong>Messages (protecting)</strong> ......................4-17  |
| <strong>Messages (receiving/checking)</strong> .......4-10  |
| <strong>Copying Text</strong> ......................................4-12  |
| <strong>Mail List</strong> ..........................................4-12  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Opening New Mail out of Standby</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieve New Msg.</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save to Data Folder</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save to Phone Book</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scroll Unit</td>
<td>13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Linked Info</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Mail Address</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing on External Display</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messages (sorting)</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti Spam Measures</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classify</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move to Folder</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messaging (→ SMS, SI Mail)</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folders (adding)</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folders (deleting)</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folders (renaming)</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font Size</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Settings</td>
<td>13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting Multiple Messages</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Secret</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sort</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unset Secret</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window Description</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microphone</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minute Minder</td>
<td>13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missed Call Notification</td>
<td>3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Light</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode Settings</td>
<td>13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTP Mode</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi Job</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi Party</td>
<td>3-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music (deleting)</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music (obtaining)</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music (playing)</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Played Music</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback Pattern</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound Effects</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Details</td>
<td>1-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sending via Bluetooth®</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sending via Infrared</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Book Lock</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Book search</td>
<td>2-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture Editor</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Entry</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Lock</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playlists</td>
<td>8-9, 8-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portrait Position</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing (Bluetooth®)</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QR Code</td>
<td>9-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Operations</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Reply</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Calls</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Msg. View</td>
<td>13-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record Caller Voice</td>
<td>3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redial (Dialed Numbers)</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference URLs</td>
<td>14-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject (calls)</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Lock (SI FeliCa)</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call Remote Lock</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count for Lock</td>
<td>9-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail Remote Lock</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notice Settings</td>
<td>9-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Monitor</td>
<td>3-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reply</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Reply</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quoting Original Message Text</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reply All</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset (→ Master Reset)</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset All</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Settings</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrieve NW Info</td>
<td>1-8, 13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringer Output</td>
<td>13-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
S

S! Addressbook Back-up.......................12-14
Auto Sync Settings..................................12-17
Confirming User ID & Password ....................12-17
Sync History...........................................12-17
S! Appli Request.........................................10-8
S! Applications ........................................8-12
Activation Time (Screensaver) ..............13-14
Application Volume................................13-14
Calls & Alarms ........................................13-14
Deleting......................................................8-13
Downloading.............................................8-13
Screensaver.............................................8-13
Surround....................................................13-14
S! Cast.......................................................9-23
Get Latest Contents ..................................9-35
S! Cast page Options...................................9-35
Weather Icon...........................................9-23
S! Circle Talk .............................................10-5
Accepting requests ...................................10-6
Editing member list...................................10-7
Initiating.....................................................10-6
IP Service Setting.....................................13-16
Loudspeaker..............................................13-16
Registering Members...............................10-5
S! Familiar Usability.................................2-25
S! FeliCa....................................................9-11
Balance Info.............................................9-32
Check Balance.........................................9-32
IC Card Settings.......................................9-12
S! FeliCa (locking)......................................9-12
S! Friend’s Status ......................................10-2
Editing member list...................................10-4
IP Service Setting.....................................13-16
Opening Member Status............................10-3
Registering Members...............................10-3
Request Reply..........................................13-16
Status Notif. List.........................................10-4
Status Update..........................................10-4
S! Loop (Japanese).....................................5-9
S! Mail......................................................4-2
Arrange Mail..........................................4-2, 4-6
Attaching Files...........................................4-5
Auto Play File..........................................13-9
Feeling Mail..........................................4-2, 4-5
Message DL.............................................13-9
Picture Appearance...................................13-9
S! Mail (sending)........................................4-4
S! Music Connect (Japanese) .....................8-3
S! Quick News..........................................5-8
Automatic Update....................................5-12
Deleting items..........................................5-12
S! Loop List..............................................5-12
S! Town (Japanese).....................................5-9
Safety Precautions.....................................vi
SAR..................................................................xv
Saved Pages................................................5-7
Deleting pages..........................................5-11
Editing Titles.............................................5-11
Scan Barcode..........................................9-26
Scan Barcode..........................................9-26
Open Barcode..........................................9-26
Scanning during Text Entry.......................9-26
Using Scan Results...................................9-26
Scan Card.................................................9-28
Scan Card.................................................9-28
Using Scan Results...................................9-28
Scan Text..................................................9-29
Scan during Text Entry..............................9-29
Using Scan Results...................................9-29
Schedules (→ Calendar)............................9-4
Security Codes.........................................1-13
Sending Status..........................................13-8
Sent Msg. View..........................................13-8
Set as Wallpaper.......................................2-29
Set Date/Time..........................................1-13
Set Send Cancel........................................2-29
Set Time Zone...........................................9-20, 13-2
Set to Default (S! Applications)..................13-14
Set to Default (S! FeliCa)............................13-15
Shortcuts....................................................2-2
S! Loop (Japanese).....................................5-9
S! Mail......................................................4-2
Arrange Mail..........................................4-2, 4-6
Attaching Files...........................................4-5
Auto Play File..........................................13-9
Feeling Mail..........................................4-2, 4-5
Message DL.............................................13-9
Picture Appearance...................................13-9
S! Mail (sending)........................................4-4
S! Music Connect (Japanese) .....................8-3
S! Quick News..........................................5-8
Automatic Update....................................5-12
Deleting items..........................................5-12
S! Loop List..............................................5-12
S! Town (Japanese).....................................5-9
Safety Precautions.....................................vi
SAR..................................................................xv
Saved Pages................................................5-7
Deleting pages..........................................5-11
Editing Titles.............................................5-11
Scan Barcode..........................................9-26
Scan Barcode..........................................9-26
Open Barcode..........................................9-26
Scanning during Text Entry.......................9-26
Using Scan Results...................................9-26
Scan Card.................................................9-28
Scan Card.................................................9-28
Using Scan Results...................................9-28
Scan Text..................................................9-29
Scan during Text Entry..............................9-29
Using Scan Results...................................9-29
Schedules (→ Calendar)............................9-4
Security Codes.........................................1-13
Sending Status..........................................13-8
Sent Msg. View..........................................13-8
Set as Wallpaper.......................................2-29
Set Date/Time..........................................1-13
Set Send Cancel........................................2-29
Set Time Zone...........................................9-20, 13-2
Set to Default (S! Applications)..................13-14
Set to Default (S! FeliCa)............................13-15
Shortcuts....................................................2-2

Index

Customizing.............................................2-25
Show My ID..............................................3-10
Show My Number.....................................3-13
Show Secret Data......................................11-3
Side Keys.................................................1-3
Signature Settings...................................4-8
Simple Menu..........................................2-4
Slide W paper..........................................2-7
Small Light..............................................1-2
SMS............................................................4-2
Expiry Time.............................................13-9
SMS (sending)..........................................4-7
Softkeys.....................................................1-6
Software Update.................................14-5
Sounds & Alerts......................................2-9, 13-5
Speaker....................................................1-2
Specifications.........................................14-18
Specifications (by function)........................14-19
Basic Operations.....................................14-19
Calling......................................................14-19
Camera & Imaging.................................14-20
Communication Services.......................14-21
Connectivity & File Backup.....................14-21
Digital TV.................................................14-19
Handy Extras............................................14-21
Media Player & S! Applications................14-20
Messaging...............................................14-19
Network Settings.................................14-21
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser...............14-19
Speed Dial List.........................................3-5
Speed Mail List.........................................4-8
Standby.....................................................1-6
Standby Window (Japanese)......................2-6
Calendar/Tag Panel...................................2-6
Display Panel..........................................2-6
Display Window........................................2-5
Member Panel..........................................2-6
News Panel..............................................2-6
Shortcut Panel..........................................2-6
Using Tags...............................................2-7
Index

Still images (capturing) ............................. 7-4
Add Frame ........................................... 7-6
Camera Effects ..................................... 7-6
Continuous Shot .................................... 7-7
Panorama Picture .................................. 7-7
Picture Size ........................................ 7-12
Scanner ............................................. 7-7
Scene .................................................. 7-12
Shutter Sound .................................... 13-13
White Balance ..................................... 13-13
Still images (capturing & sending) ........... 7-4, 7-7
Still images (editing) ............................... 7-8
Additional editing options ........................ 7-13
Changing sizes ...................................... 7-9
Face Arrange ....................................... 7-9
Merge Panorama .................................... 7-10
Stopwatch .......................................... 9-21
Strap Eyelet ......................................... 3-12
Swap Calls .......................................... 3-12
System Graphics .................................... 13-3
System Sounds ...................................... 13-5
Text (editing) ....................................... 2-14
Text Entry .......................................... 2-10
Call Notepad ....................................... 9-31
Clear Log ............................................ 9-31
Emotions .......................................... 2-12
Hiragana .......................................... 2-11
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion ............................................. 2-13
Input/Conversion ................................. 13-6
Inserting Line Breaks ............................. 2-26
Inserting Phone Book Entry Items .......... 2-26
Inserting Spaces ................................... 2-26
Kanji ............................................... 2-11
Katakana ............................................ 2-12
Mail & Web Extensions ............................ 2-13
One-Hiragana Conversion ....................... 2-11
Quick Conversion .................................. 2-13
Reset Learning ..................................... 2-26
Switching Entry Modes ........................... 2-10
Symbols & Pictograms ............................ 2-12
Undo/Recover ....................................... 2-26
Using Character Codes ............................ 2-26
Using Pager Code ................................... 2-26
When Target Word is Not Listed ............... 2-11
Time Correction .................................... 13-2
Troubleshooting .................................... 14-4
TV (watching) ....................................... 6-4
AV mode select ..................................... 6-9
Channels (saving) ................................... 6-9
Data Broadcast (Japanese) ....................... 6-5
Help .................................................. 6-9
Program Information ............................... 6-5
TV Listing (Japanese) ............................. 6-5
Using Wireless Headphones ..................... 6-9
TV Player .......................................... 6-7
TV programs (recording/playing) ............. 6-6
Marker .............................................. 6-10
Memory Remaining ............................... 6-9
Playback Pattern ................................... 6-9
Playing Split Files ................................. 6-10
Recorded programs (deleting) .................. 6-10
Recorded programs (renaming) ................ 6-10
TV Timers (recording/watching) ............. 6-8
Setting Timer via Program Information .... 6-10
Timer entries (editing/deleting) ............... 6-10
Timer log records (opening/deleting) ....... 6-10
Wakeup TV ......................................... 9-17
USIM Card ......................................... 14-2
USIM PINs (― PIN) ................................. 14-2
Utility Software ..................................... v, 12-10

Table of Contents .................................. iii
Tasks .................................................. 9-6
Deleting Tasks ..................................... 9-7
Editing Tasks ...................................... 9-30
Opening Tasks ..................................... 9-7
Text (editing) ..................................... 2-14
Text Entry ......................................... 2-10
Call Notepad ....................................... 9-31
Clear Log .......................................... 2-27
Emotions .......................................... 2-12
Hiragana .......................................... 2-11
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion ............................................. 2-13
Input/Conversion ................................. 13-6
Inserting Line Breaks ............................. 2-26
Inserting Phone Book Entry Items .......... 2-26

U
USB Cable ........................................ v, 1-7, 13-17
USB Charge ....................................... 1-7
Editing/deleting entries .......................... 2-26
User Dictionary .................................... 2-15
USIM Card ......................................... 14-2
USIM PINs (― PIN) ................................. 14-2
Utility Software ..................................... v, 12-10

V
Vibration ............................................. 2-9
Video (deleting) .................................... 8-7
Video (editing) ..................................... 8-9
Video (obtaining) ................................. 8-3
Video (playing) ..................................... 8-6
Display Size ....................................... 8-14
Last Played Video ................................ 8-14
Playback Pattern .................................. 8-14
Sound Effects ..................................... 8-14
Video (recording) ................................. 7-5
Display Size ....................................... 13-13
Microphone ....................................... 13-13
Record Time/Size ................................ 7-12
Video (recording & sending) ................. 7-5
Video Calling ....................................... 3-4
Alternative Image ................................... 13-7
Incoming Picture ................................... 13-7
Loudspeaker ....................................... 13-7
Outgoing Picture ................................... 13-7
Remote Monitor ................................... 3-10
Video Calls (answering) ....................... 3-4
Video Calls (placing) ............................ 3-4
Video subtitles .................................... 8-10
Changing Start/End Point ........................ 8-11
Deleting ........................................... 8-11
Editing Text ....................................... 8-11
Voice Calling ...................................... 3-2
Voice Calls (answering) ....................... 3-3
Voice Calls (placing) .................................. 3-3
Voice Calls (placing while abroad) ............. 3-3
Voice Recorder ....................................... 9-10
Record Time ......................................... 9-31
Save and Send..................................... 9-31
Save Recording to.................................. 9-31
Voicemail ............................................. 3-8
Volume (ringtones) ................................ 13-5

W
Wakeup TV ............................................. 9-17
Wallpaper ............................................. 2-7
Weather Indicator .................................. 14-37
Weather Indicator .................................. 14-37
Icon Update .......................................... 13-15
Manual Update ..................................... 9-23
Standby Setting .................................... 13-15
Weather .............................................. 9-35
World Clock ......................................... 9-20
Adding Custom Time Zone ...................... 9-34
Opening World Clock in Standby ............. 9-20

Y
Yahoo! Keitai ......................................... 5-3

Objectives
Accessing the Internet
From Internet pages ................................ 5-11
From message text .................................. 4-12
From scan results ................................... 9-36
Media Player ......................................... 8-3
PC Site Browser ..................................... 5-4
Yahoo! Keitai ........................................ 5-3
Browsing/Viewing
Document Viewer .................................... 9-24
e-Books ............................................. 9-26
PC Site Browser ..................................... 5-4
SI Cast ................................................ 9-23
SI Quick News ...................................... 5-8
Yahoo! Keitai ......................................... 5-3
Calculating
Calculator ............................................ 9-14
Expenses Memo .................................... 9-9
Canceling
Alarm .................................................. 9-16
Answer Phone ...................................... 9-3
Call Forwarding .................................... 9-9
Download Dictionary ............................ 2-15
Hour Minder ........................................ 9-19
IC Card Lock ......................................... 9-12
Keypad Lock ........................................ 1-9
Large Font Menu .................................... 2-5
Manner mode ....................................... 1-12
Offline Mode ........................................ 1-12
Password Lock ..................................... 11-2
SI Cast ............................................... 9-23
SI Familiar Usability ............................... 2-25
Secret folders ....................................... 2-29, 4-18
Simple Menu ........................................ 2-4
Voicemail .......................................... 5-9
Changing
Font Size ............................................ 2-5
Font Weight .......................................... 2-5
Handset Code ....................................... 1-13
Handset mail address ............................. 4-3
Network Password ................................ 3-13
PINs .................................................. 11-4
Changing Ringtones
Data Folder .......................................... 2-29
Feeling Mail ........................................ 13-8
Phone Book ......................................... 2-17
Ringtone/videos .................................... 2-9
Composing/Sending Messages
Arrange Mail ........................................ 4-6, 4-9
Feeling Mail ........................................ 4-5
From Call Log ...................................... 3-11
From Internet pages ............................... 5-11
From message text ................................ 4-12
From Phone Book .................................. 2-27
From received messages ....................... 4-11
From scan results ................................ 9-36
From sent messages ............................. 4-17
SI Mail ............................................. 4-4
SMS .................................................. 4-7
Copying
Calculation results ............................... 9-32
Data Folder files .................................... 2-22
Scan results ........................................ 9-37
Text (e-Books) ..................................... 9-36
Text (Internet) ...................................... 5-10
Text (Messaging) ................................... 4-13
Text (SI Cast pages) .............................. 9-36
Text entry window .................. 2-14
Exchanging Files
Bluetooth® .......................................... 12-6
Infrared ............................................. 12-2
IrSS Transfer ....................................... 12-2
Mass Storage ...................................... 12-10
MTP Mode .......................................... 8-3
Hiding Files/Entries
Data Folder ......................................... 2-22
Messaging folders ................................ 4-14
Phone Book ....................................... 2-17
Schedules/tasks .................................... 9-30
Inserting/Removing
Battery .............................................. 14-4
Memory Card ....................................... 2-23
USIM Card .......................................... 14-3
Locking/Restricting
Call Log ............................................ 11-3
Incoming/outgoing calls ......................... 3-13
Keypad Lock ....................................... 1-9
Mail records ........................................ 11-3
Password Lock ..................................... 11-2
Phone Book ........................................ 11-3
PIN Entry .......................................... 11-2
SI FeliCa ........................................... 9-12
Managing Schedules
Calendar ........................................... 9-3
Warranty & Service

Warranty
Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.
- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

After-Sales Services
See P.14-6 “Troubleshooting” before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.
If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.14-38) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.
- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.14-38).
Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.
Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subscription Area</th>
<th>Service Center</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer Assistance</td>
<td>0088-240-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka</td>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>0088-241-157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer Assistance</td>
<td>0088-241-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama</td>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>0088-242-157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer Assistance</td>
<td>0088-242-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa</td>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>0088-250-157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customer Assistance</td>
<td>0088-250-113</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.